

‘For to plant all maner plants’:  
French and English Household Books as Sources for Gardening in the Late 16<sup>th</sup> –  
Early 17<sup>th</sup> Centuries

## Table of Contents

Preface.....	2
List of abbreviations .....	4
Introduction .....	5
Chapter 1 – The household book.....	9
Chapter 2 – The manuscripts.....	15
Chapter 3 – The advice.....	25
Chapter 4 – The sources.....	38
Chapter 5 – Conclusions.....	49
Appendix: Transcriptions of the gardening entries found in the French and English household books used in this dissertation	
Egerton MS 2608.....	53
Sloane MS 556.....	57
Harley MS 2389 .....	59
Lansdowne MS 101/8 .....	61
Lansdowne MS 101/9 .....	68
Add MS 61822.....	73
MS Ferguson 150 .....	111
Français 19087.....	113
Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë.....	114
Add MS 20709.....	115
Glossary of English gardening terms .....	117
Glossary of French gardening terms.....	119
Bibliography .....	120
Images	
Egerton MS 2608, f. 10 <sup>v</sup> .....	126
Egerton MS 2608, f. 85 <sup>v</sup> .....	127
Sloane MS 556, f. 24 <sup>r</sup> .....	128
Harley MS 2389, f. 64 <sup>r</sup> .....	129
Lansdowne MS 101/8, f. 38 <sup>v</sup> .....	130
Lansdowne MS 101/9, f. 45 <sup>r</sup> .....	131
Add MS 61822, f. 105 <sup>v</sup> .....	132
Add MS 61822, f. 116 <sup>r</sup> .....	133
MS Ferguson 150, 272-273.....	134
MS Ferguson 150, 273.....	135
Français 19087, f. 33 <sup>v</sup> .....	136
Add MS 20709, ff. 3 <sup>v</sup> -4 <sup>r</sup> .....	137
Add MS 20709, f. 4 <sup>v</sup> .....	138

## Preface

I have for some time now had a great interest in both the history of gardening and the history of the Renaissance. The perfect opportunity to combine the two arose in writing this dissertation. I did not, however, wish to study the great formal gardens of palaces and grand houses, but rather the domestic gardening practices of individuals. After much discussion with my supervisor and after reading, in particular, Elaine Leong's article on women's use of household books for medicinal purposes in the seventeenth century,<sup>1</sup> I discovered that household books could serve as an equally fascinating source for private gardening during the Renaissance. With my supervisor's approval, I will be citing these documents in their original language and form throughout my dissertation, including line breaks (identified by a slash (/)), inconsistencies in spelling and punctuation, and use of the thorn symbol where applicable. I have also added brief definitions of words and phrases in brackets and footnotes as necessary, and have included a glossary at the end of my dissertation where more unusual French and English gardening terms receive greater explanation. Terms that appear in the glossary are indicated with the symbol ° throughout. All translations and transcriptions are my own unless stated otherwise. In addition, in order to offer a better sense of the context and range of gardening advice found in household books, transcriptions of full entries or relevant excerpts are presented in the appendix. I have also included a selection of images at the very end of this dissertation.

For general categorisation of the activities discussed throughout my dissertation, I have chosen to make use of the term 'gardening' (and all its derivatives) according to its most basic sense of growing and cultivating plants. Thus, agriculture (or husbandry), olericulture, arboriculture, and floriculture will all be treated as 'gardening' activities.

I would like to thank Professor Charles Burnett for the wise advice and kind support he offered me throughout this process, and especially for the constant patience he showed in answering my numerous questions. I am also very grateful to Raechel Beardwood who helped me organise a trip to Glasgow University's Special

---

<sup>1</sup> See 'Herbals she peruseth', in *Renaissance Studies*, XXVIII, 2014, pp. 556-578. The quote in the title of this dissertation was taken from London, British Library Harley MS 2389, f. 65<sup>r</sup>.24.

Collections to see MS Ferguson 150, to the staff at the Bibliothèque Nationale de France, who provided me with a partial reproduction of the manuscript Français 19087, and of course the staff of the British Library who retrieved the same items for me over and over again, and allowed me to take many of my own photographs of the documents.

List of abbreviations

Add 2	Add MS 20709
Add 6	Add MS 61822
Egerton	Egerton MS 2608
Ferguson	MS Ferguson 150
Français	Français 19087
Harley	Harley MS 2389
Lansdowne 8	Lansdowne MS 101/8
Lansdowne 9	Lansdowne MS 101/9
LDR La Landelle	Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë
Sloane	Sloane MS 556

## Introduction

There is no doubt that a significant feature of sixteenth and seventeenth century garden history in France and England was the newly developed artistic value attributed to gardens.<sup>2</sup> Indeed, it was in the mid-sixteenth century that the concept of creating gardens as works of art truly developed, and that the practice of gardening itself became a liberal, rather than simply a mechanical, art.<sup>3</sup> One need look no further than the magnificent gardens of Versailles and Hampton Court, to see that it was a time of sumptuous formal gardens, symbols of the power and magnificence of royal palaces and wealthy households.<sup>4</sup> It was a time when complex iconographical programmes often inspired by classical antiquity were incorporated into the careful layout of trees, shrubs, flowers, sculptures, and water features.<sup>5</sup> Furthermore, it became common belief that through the creation of a beautiful garden one could attempt to recapture the paradisiacal nature of the Garden of Eden.<sup>6</sup> Overwhelmed by these breathtaking new designs, it is perhaps easy to overlook the fact that such artistic development was not the only important change to have occurred during the period; at other levels of society a somewhat different trend in the practice of gardening was simultaneously emerging.

Cultivating one's own private garden and farming one's own land, activities which had perhaps previously only been associated with peasants and individuals of the lower social classes, became popular among members of the upper-middle class,

---

<sup>2</sup> The new relationship between art and garden is one of the most studied aspects of Renaissance garden history: see D. Wiebenson, *The Picturesque Garden in France*, Princeton 1978, and John Dixon Hunt's *The Picturesque Garden in Europe*, London 2002; also R. Strong, *The Renaissance Garden in England*, London 1979; V. Beurtheret, *Versailles des jardins vers ailleurs*, Château-Gontier 1996; G. Capecchi, *Cosimo II e le arti di Boboli*, Florence 2008; E. de Jong, *Natuur en kunst*, Amsterdam 1995.

<sup>3</sup> A. Samson, 'Introduction', in *Locus Amoenus: Gardens and Horticulture in the Renaissance*, ed. A. Samson, Chichester 2012, pp. 1-23 (1, 4); C. Quest-Ritson, *The English Garden*, London 2001, 3.

<sup>4</sup> Very quickly gardens became yet another source of rivalry for competing monarchs who were determined not be outdone by one another. Samson, 'Introduction', 5. Strong, *The Renaissance Garden*, 10, 31.

<sup>5</sup> D. Coffin, *Gardens and Gardening in Papal Rome*, Princeton 1991, 76.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, 4.

aristocrats and members of the lower nobility as well.<sup>7</sup> A key reason for this development in England, as presented by Joan Thirsk in her article ‘Making a Fresh Start: Sixteenth-Century Agriculture and the Classical Inspiration’, was the general rise in food prices and decreasing rent costs.<sup>8</sup> No longer able to lease their land for others to cultivate, as had been possible in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, landowners became personally involved in gardening.<sup>9</sup> Somewhat similarly in France, members of the upper classes found themselves forced to return to the land due to civil disorder, and their own impoverishment.<sup>10</sup> The royal entourage of king Henri IV also encouraged this movement by suggesting that only a gentleman who could live off his own resources and attend to the management of his own land was truly a ‘good lord’.<sup>11</sup> Classical works on husbandry, which were seeing a strong revival in this period, in turn gave gentlemen the validation they sought for their involvement in such activities. Works by Cato, Varro, Columella, and Palladius, which became increasingly available thanks to the creation of the collected edition *Scriptores rei rusticae veteres latini* (from now on referred to as *Scriptores rei rusticae*), as well as Virgil’s *Georgics*, all praised the idea of cultivating one’s own land.<sup>12</sup> Members of the upper classes were given further incentive to participate in gardening activities from the discoveries of the New World and the never-before-seen species of plants that were making their way to Europe.<sup>13</sup> Thanks to the renewed interest in the science of botany that emerged during the period of exploration, gentlemen started to create their own private gardens where they could experiment with the cultivation of these new

---

<sup>7</sup> J. Thirsk, ‘Making a Fresh Start’, in *Culture and Cultivation in Early Modern England*, ed. M. Leslie and J. Raylor, Leicester 1992, pp. 15-34 (16); Samson, ‘Introduction’, 3. From now on, these individuals will be collectively referred to as ‘members of the upper classes’ or simply ‘gentlemen’. As Barry Coward explains, in the sixteenth century the class of ‘gentlemen’ was at the top of the social hierarchy, and was made up of all those wealthy enough to own land and afford leisure: *Social Change and Continuity*, New York 2014, 3.

<sup>8</sup> 16.

<sup>9</sup> Thirsk, ‘Making a Fresh Start’, 16; Samson, ‘Introduction’, 2.

<sup>10</sup> T. Mariage, *L’Univers de le Nostre*, Brussels 1990, 9.

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid.*, 11.

<sup>12</sup> A. McRae, ‘Husbandry Manuals and the Language of Agrarian Improvement’, in *Culture and Cultivation in Early Modern England*, pp. 35-62 (36); D. Chambers, *The Planters of the English Landscape Garden*, New Haven 1993, 6.

<sup>13</sup> Samson, ‘Introduction’, 15.

plants. All this experimenting eventually allowed them to develop new horticultural practices that would revolutionise the art of domestic gardening.<sup>14</sup>

This new involvement of upper class individuals in the fields of gardening and cultivation, soon led to debates over the status of these activities as well as questions concerning to whom the space of the garden should belong.<sup>15</sup> Getting one's fingernails dirty in the garden was something that had previously been associated with peasants, hired hands, and very often, women.<sup>16</sup> Could a high-ranking man respectably get involved in such activities? Indeed, now that gentlemen found themselves in need of doing the work themselves, they attempted to raise the status of gardening to the more dignified level of profession. One of the means to do so was through writing.<sup>17</sup> A whole genre of 'agricultural literature' developed, which was written specifically for the educated elite, included Latin excerpts from Classical sources, and instructed these individuals on the manner of overseeing the care of their own land. Writing manuals with practical gardening advice and instructions for members of the lower social classes eventually also became a popular pastime for gentlemen.<sup>18</sup> Elevating the status of gardening was perhaps not such an easy task, however, as D. Chambers states that still in post-reformation England, 'if there was one field in which the celebrated divorce between polite and popular culture [...] was not apparent, it was gardening.'<sup>19</sup> Evidence of this can perhaps be seen in household books belonging to members of the upper class, in which it is possible to find collections of tips and advice on growing and caring for all manner of plants more successfully. After all, writing on agriculture and gardening in general, which became so popular throughout the sixteenth century and into the seventeenth century, must have stemmed on some level from the basic need of gentlemen to acquire knowledge about activities in which they had perhaps never before personally engaged.

Therefore, through this dissertation, it is my aim to study gardening tips written in French and English household books from the late sixteenth and early

---

<sup>14</sup> A. Morton, *A History of Botanical Science*, London 1981, 118, 119, 120; Quest-Ritson, *The English Garden*, 21.

<sup>15</sup> Samson, 'Introduction', 4.

<sup>16</sup> Quest-Ritson, *The English Garden*, 52; R. Bushnell, *Green Desire*, Ithaca 2003, 109.

<sup>17</sup> Bushnell, *Green Desire*, 16.

<sup>18</sup> A. McRae, 'Husbandry Manuals', 37, 38, 45, 46; N. Zemon Davis, *Society and Culture in Early Modern France*, London 1975, 205, 206.

<sup>19</sup> Chambers, *Planters of the Landscape Garden*, 4.



seventeenth centuries, in an attempt to discover a little bit more about private gardening practices at the time. This is a source of information for garden history that has been largely left untapped, the focus in the past having been placed on plans of courtly gardens, paintings, published gardening manuals, or other private documents such as letters and contemporary travel writings that offered descriptions of gardens the author might have visited. I hope perhaps to identify plants that were most popular or most usual to grow at home, some of the common concerns and difficulties experienced by gardeners, sources for the tips and advice that were noted down to solve such problems, the kinds of superstitions that might have existed around gardening, and possibly who was actually involved in the gardening process. At the core of my analysis are ten manuscript household books, located in France and the UK, each containing their own unique gardening entries. A full description of each document can be found in chapter two.

## Chapter 1-The household book

When studying texts pertaining to private affairs, one can be very hard pressed to find a term that satisfactorily describes the genre. Almost every one of the manuscripts used in this dissertation was catalogued under a different title, ranging from ‘household book’, to ‘book of recipes’, ‘papers’, ‘domestic receipts’ and ‘commonplace book’. French terms included ‘livre de raison’ or ‘livre de famille’ and simply ‘mélanges’. The wide variety of names that this genre has received over the years could be due to the diversity of material its texts have to offer, as well as to the fact that original titles, when included by the owner,<sup>20</sup> differed greatly from book to book despite all being the same type of document.<sup>21</sup> Indeed, although commonplace books and *livres de raison*, were at one time identified as specific branches of the genre,<sup>22</sup> recent studies by scholars like Earle Havens, Jonathan Gibson and Sylvie Mouysset have shown that during the Renaissance, they too were extremely variable in content, titles, and format, and thus cannot be defined with certainty.<sup>23</sup>

It became increasingly popular throughout the sixteenth century to compile a book of private affairs, and despite the emergence of style manuals that offered guidance on the most efficient way to create such a book,<sup>24</sup> a specific format was not always followed, for these were personal items. Owners could choose to organise them in whatever way was most suited to their needs and could include whatever information was most important or relevant to their current situation. Sometimes these books were carefully organised with headings, page numbers, and marginal notes but

---

<sup>20</sup> Seeing as these were personal belongings, created and used usually by one person or close relatives only, a title was not always deemed necessary.

<sup>21</sup> Other names include ‘memoranda books’, ‘diaries’, ‘anthologies’, ‘pocket books’, ‘miscellanies’ and its French equivalent ‘miscellanées’, *vade mecums*, ‘papiers journaux’, ‘grands livres’, and ‘notes domestiques’. E. Havens, *Commonplace Books*, New Haven 2001, 7, 10; S. Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, Rennes 2007, 47.

<sup>22</sup> Commonplace books were typically those that followed a style that emerged in Antiquity of collecting textual excerpts under thematic headings. Havens, *Commonplace Books*, 8, 13. *Livres de raison* were generally thought to be books in which the father of the household would write events occurring in the lives of his family. Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 15. For the major foundational work on *livres de raison* see C. de Ribbe, *Livre de famille*, Tours 1879.

<sup>23</sup> Havens, *Commonplace Books*, 7, 9, 10, 73; J. Gibson, ‘Casting off Blanks’, in *Material Readings of Early Modern Culture*, ed. J. Daybell and P. Hinds, Hampshire 2010, 210, 211; Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 23.

<sup>24</sup> Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 30, 39.

often they were nothing more than scraps of paper roughly sewn together at home and filled with hurriedly scribbled thoughts.<sup>25</sup> Furthermore, in many cases, books that perhaps began with the intention of being ‘commonplace’, that is, with predetermined thematic sections, eventually degenerated into a loose collection of randomly assorted entries.<sup>26</sup> It is not uncommon, for example, to find a recipe for rhubarb syrup between two medical recipes serving perhaps to cure ‘the green sickness’<sup>27</sup> and ‘the yellow jaundice’,<sup>28</sup> and all three preceding a list of the qualities one should look for in a good wife or perhaps a good horse. In any case, however, it is clear that household books were meant to be functional, allowing one to jot down a note quickly and efficiently, and were meant to offer practical advice. They were usually compiled over a long period of time, being added to at leisure and according to need.

Consequently, deciding on one title alone to give the genre for ease of referencing throughout my dissertation was not an easy task. I have chosen to use the term ‘household book’ because it is one of the titles that I find most descriptive of the genre and does not limit the scope of its contents too much. The term ‘household’, acting as a modifier means ‘of, relating to, or used in the running of a household; domestic’.<sup>29</sup> A ‘household book’, then, could include entries of any kind relating to one’s private life at home, or could simply represent a book that was kept at home and in which one wrote matters of interest.

Determining the authors, or owners, of household books can also be quite challenging. Sometimes a name is included in the title (for example Anthony Lewes clearly identified himself as the author of Sloane MS 556 (from now on referred to as Sloane)), or signatures appear alongside a date at the end of the book (Thomas and John Suffield equally clearly claimed ownership of their household book, Harley MS 2389 (from now on referred to as Harley)).<sup>30</sup> Quite often, however, household books are not accompanied by a name and one is left to guess whether the author was male

---

<sup>25</sup> Havens, *Commonplace Books*, 9; Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 15.

<sup>26</sup> Gibson, ‘Casting off Blanks’, 211; Mouysset, *Papiers de famille* 47.

<sup>27</sup> Today this disease is generally associated with hypochromic anemia, which is often characterised by a greenish tinge to the skin. H. King, *The Disease of Virgins*, London 2004, 13, 99.

<sup>28</sup> It is being distinguished here from the ‘black jaundice’ (which is commonly identified with *Leptospirosis* today) as appears in both Egerton MS 2608 and Sloane. See also T. Graham, *Modern Domestic Medicine*, London 1829, 447, for a description of the different varieties of jaundice.

<sup>29</sup> See Collins English Dictionary, Glasgow 2014, s.v. ‘household’.

<sup>30</sup> For more on this see chapter 2.

or female, whether prosperous farmer, merchant, aristocrat or nobleman.<sup>31</sup> It is interesting to note that both men and women took part in the culture of keeping household books. It has been established that the majority of the French *livres de raison* (according to their traditional definition) were compiled by the male head of the household, but even this trend has exceptions, as widowed women would sometimes take up the writing after their husband's passing.<sup>32</sup> Similarly, while the identifiable authors of the household books in this study are all men, some include references to women's writings (see p. 46, n. 186 for a specific example), and the 'Perdita Manuscripts Project' has also brought to light a great number of manuscripts written by women in England in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, some of which are indeed household books.<sup>33</sup> Given cultural attitudes of the time and accessibility to education, it is generally safe to assume that the majority of household books were written by members of the upper classes, who were, for the most part, literate and well educated.<sup>34</sup>

As for the question of for whom these books were written, the answer is equally unclear. As mentioned above, these were personal documents, compiled by the owner for his or her own benefit. In the off chance that they were intended to be read by someone other than the author, the audience would have been limited to other members of the household or perhaps even close friends, who also could have benefitted from the advice, recipes, and instructions contained within. The author also could have intentionally created a household book for his or her children in an attempt to offer them guidance and in order to preserve the family's history. Additionally, one can sometimes even see a few different hands in the same household book, evidence of multiple family members (from the same or different generations) editing and adding to the collection of knowledge. Given the format and general lack of attention

---

<sup>31</sup> These are very broad categories of social ranks, listed here in ascending hierarchy. For more on the division of social classes in England see: Coward, *Social Change and Continuity*, 1-6; and in France: J. Farr, *The Work of France*, Lanham 2008.

<sup>32</sup> Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 121.

<sup>33</sup> See the 'Perdita Manuscripts, 1500-1700' collection tab at <http://www.amdigital.co.uk>; Rebecca Bushnell also believes that women would have been keeping notes on gardening in their diaries: Bushnell, *Green Desire*, 108.

<sup>34</sup> Mouysset, *Papiers de famille*, 106.

paid to handwriting, however, it is fairly certain that household books were never made for public consumption.<sup>35</sup>

What exactly, then, can one find in a household book? As briefly mentioned above, the answer is pretty much anything. With both male and female authors of different ages and social ranks, household books truly offer a wealth of information about everyday life. The following is certainly not an exhaustive list of everything one might find in a household book from the sixteenth or seventeenth century, but hopefully it can offer a taste of some of the fascinating bits and pieces one might come across.

First of all, recipes, be it medical or culinary, seem to be one of the most popular entries.<sup>36</sup> The medical recipes offer remedies to cure all kinds of ills such as aching bones, the bite of a mad dog, a pestilence, sore eyes, open wounds, and the falling sickness,<sup>37</sup> as well as less severe issues such as bad breath and head lice. Sometimes one can even find monthly advice for overall wellbeing, for example Egerton MS 2608 (from now on referred to as Egerton) which instructs that in the month of February: ‘To bathe is not hurtfull nor to take a potion / Bledde (bleed) in the vaine under the thombe / Take pilles (pills) to purge (purge) the gall (gallbladder) / Eat honie with bread to purge the / Breste and bladder.’<sup>38</sup> Depending on the complexity of the remedy, these entries can be anything from a couple of lines to several paragraphs long. Furthermore, they do not only refer to human diseases, but many often apply to animals, with horses, cows, and sheep receiving the most attention. One can also find quite a number of culinary recipes for things like

---

<sup>35</sup> At times it might seem that the authors of household books were addressing a wider audience due to the fairly common occurrence of ‘you’ and ‘ye’, but there is nothing to suggest that ‘you’ was not their child, or even simply themselves.

<sup>36</sup> This perhaps goes to show that gender divisions in the household were not as definitive as commonly believed. Home medicine and the preparation of food was generally thought to be part of the woman’s domain. Such expectations were present in advice manuals like Gervase Markham’s ‘The English hus-wife’, and Elaine Leong has shown that women did in fact read popular herbals of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries and made their own notes from them (see her article ‘Herbals she peruseth’, in *Renaissance Studies*, XXVIII, 2014, pp. 556-578). Of the manuscripts included in the present study, however, many of those containing large numbers of medical and/or culinary recipes explicitly belonged to men. This could indicate that men too, then, played a role in home healing and cooking.

<sup>37</sup> This illness is now known as epilepsy. For more on this see O. Temkin, *The Falling Sickness*, Baltimore 1971.

<sup>38</sup> London, British Library Egerton MS 2608, f. 88<sup>r</sup>.

marmalade and other fruit jellies, pancakes, sweets, flavoured waters, as well as various recipes for pickling vegetables and preserving fruits. Finally, still in the category of recipes, instructions for making ink (and very commonly disappearing ink), different coloured paints, wax fruit moulds, and magical charms, all make appearances.

Other very popular entries have to do with daily activities like lace-weaving, personal concerns like making oils that could remove facial wrinkles and unwanted hair, and family business like recording financial matters or special occasions such as births, deaths, and marriages. These family records were often described with an incredible amount of detail, for example:

François Sambson, dit Villecourt, mary de damoiselle Perrine de la Landelle, mourut le jeuedy 9<sup>e</sup> jour de novembre an 1600, environ menuict, et fut enterré le lendemain vendredy au matin en l'église d'Allaire et le vendredy 12<sup>e</sup> jour de janvyer, an 1601, sa veufve vint demeurer à la Grae en Peillac avec sa chambrière (femme de chambre) Jacqueline.<sup>39</sup>

These also sometimes went as far as to include historical events like the death of a king, a particularly cold winter or the appearance of a comet. Mixed in with the recipes and family records, it is also possible to find prayers, collections of sayings, or excerpts of poetry. One might even be lucky enough to come across a fascinating entry like 'pour se faire aimer d'homme ou de femme'.<sup>40</sup>

Most importantly for the present purpose however, is the fact that one can find entries about gardening in household books. While often not overly extensive and often written in arbitrary places, such as stuck between a recipe for an almond 'cawdell'<sup>41</sup> and a remedy for consumption, these entries do appear fairly frequently and can receive their own section of two to three pages in length, and sometimes even more. Always seeking to help one's plants flourish, these might be personally tested tips and advice, or excerpts from Classical or contemporary sources. In either case,

---

<sup>39</sup> Peillac, Archives du château de la Graë Uncatalogued Manuscript. I am using M. R. de Laigue's printed reproduction: *Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë* [1569-1602], Vannes 1893; 12. 'François Sambson, so-called Villecourt, husband of Lady Perrine de la Landelle, died Thursday, the 9<sup>th</sup> day of November 1600, at approximately midnight, and was buried the following day Friday, in the morning, at the church of Allaire, and Friday, the 12<sup>th</sup> day of January 1601, his widow came to stay at la Graë en Peillac with her chambermaid Jacqueline.'

<sup>40</sup> Glasgow, University of Glasgow MS Ferguson 150, 276. 'to make oneself loved by a man or a woman'.

<sup>41</sup> A thickened, almond flavoured drink or pudding.

however, the aspect of garden layout is generally absent, the focus being placed on the actual practice of growing plants, be it preparing the soil, sowing seeds, weeding beds, or improving the quality of growth. Furthermore, these tips seem to focus on three main areas of gardening: the first is that of agriculture (or perhaps more accurately for the period: crop husbandry); the second, that of arboriculture (and especially the practice of grafting); the third, that of olericulture; advice on floriculture actually seems to be quite rare. Altogether they can offer valuable insight into the practice of gardening during the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries.

## Chapter 2- The manuscripts

The ten household books that form the basis of this study are by no means the only extant household books containing gardening advice. They are simply the ones I was able to find and access in the limited time available to me to undertake my research. Six of these books are in English: Egerton, Sloane, Harley (which includes a couple of entries in Latin), Lansdowne MS 101/8 (from now on referred to as Lansdowne 8), Lansdowne MS 101/9 (from now on referred to as Lansdowne 9), and Add MS 61822 (which also includes some Latin; from now on referred to as Add 6); three are in French: MS Ferguson 150 (which has a smattering of Italian; from now on referred to as Ferguson), Français 19087 (which also has at least one entry in Italian; from now on referred to as Français), and *Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë* (from now on referred to as LDR La Landelle); and one is a mixture of French, English, and Latin: Add MS 20709 (from now on referred to as Add 2). Due to the similar nature of these texts, all ten will be analysed as one unit in the following chapters, and no distinction will be made between the languages. All of these household books are currently held at the British Library, except for Ferguson, which is located at the University of Glasgow, and Français and LDR La Landelle, both of which are at the Bibliothèque Nationale de France.<sup>42</sup> Because household books are so unique both in terms of content and format, before presenting and analysing the gardening tips found within, I shall first provide a physical description of each book, so that the reader may get a better sense of the overall nature of household books. I have also tried to offer as much detail as possible about the author of each text, but in some cases there is simply not enough information available.

### *Egerton MS 2608*

Probably one of the most interesting in terms of format, this manuscript is an oblong octavo, measuring c. 23.5 cm. wide and 17 cm. high. It is the only manuscript presented here that was written on vellum. It has been rebound by the British Library, but the original leather covers have been kept with the document. There are 99 folios,

---

<sup>42</sup> A full reproduction of LDR La Landelle is available through the Gallica database of the Bibliothèque Nationale.



both with their original and with modern foliation.<sup>43</sup> Many different hands can be seen throughout the manuscript, with the text running in every possible direction, as entries were added at different times in whatever space was available. While this makes it slightly chaotic to read and understand chronologically, it is perhaps one of the best examples of a household book that was in constant use for several generations. It is also one of the best demonstrations of the variety of information that could be included in a household book, containing poems, medical recipes, culinary recipes, gardening advice (ff. 10<sup>v</sup>, 11<sup>r</sup>, 85<sup>v</sup>, 86<sup>r</sup>),<sup>44</sup> and rules for maintaining one's health during the different months. According to the British Library online catalogue, this manuscript dates from the sixteenth to the early seventeenth century.<sup>45</sup> The year 1624 does appear on f. 99<sup>r</sup>, written in one of the many hands found within the manuscript. It seems to be part of a family record which reads 'John the sonne of Thomas Peachey bapt. the xxviii<sup>th</sup> of Febrery Anno 1624'.<sup>46</sup> As no dates that can be associated with the other hands seem to have been recorded, it is impossible to date the manuscript more precisely. Given the nature of household books it is likely that Thomas Peachey was one of the many authors of this book, as was perhaps his son John in turn. Unfortunately, however, there is no concrete evidence within the text to support this supposition. Neither man seems to have been influential enough to receive his own biographical study that could shed further light on their lives (the British Library categorises Thomas Peachey simply as 'unspecified'), and the name Peachey seems to have been quite common, making research into their history quite complex. Other names do appear within the book as references for some of the recipes, but determining whether they belong to acquaintances, friends, neighbours, or simply figures who had been traditionally associated with the recipes, would be the matter of another research project. At present then, it is possible only to assume that this household book belonged to the Peachey family, was perhaps passed down from father to son, and thus was probably written by the males of the household.

---

<sup>43</sup> Up until page 182, the original numbers appear on the recto and verso of the page. After this numbers appear only on the recto, although there is still writing on both sides.

<sup>44</sup> ff. 10<sup>v</sup> and 11<sup>r</sup> are in a different hand than ff. 85<sup>v</sup> and 86<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>45</sup> 'Egerton MS 2608', in *British Library Explore Archives and Manuscripts*, at <http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>.

<sup>46</sup> Egerton, f. 99<sup>r</sup>.

*Sloane MS 556*

One of the largest of the household books at c. 19 cm. wide and 30.5 cm. high, this paper manuscript was the easiest to read, written in a very neat and tidy hand, which remains the same throughout the whole book. It has 54 + i folios, with modern foliation and two other sets of earlier numbers present, one in red ink and one in black.<sup>47</sup> Each leaf has been mounted individually on a guard, the whole placed within a modern binding. The folios are unruled, but marginal lines were drawn in by hand at the top and left hand side of the page, and there are approximately thirty-five to forty lines of text per page. It has been very helpfully dated and signed by the author who included this title: ‘A Booke of Medicens Collected being most or all / of them proved medicens to healp written by Mr / Anthony Lewes the 20<sup>th</sup> of January 1606: out of a / Booke which was the Lady Marques Dorsetts’.<sup>48</sup> In terms of who Anthony Lewes was, the only information about him that seems to be available is his authorship of this manuscript. Still, this household book provides the perfect example of an owner who had the intention of creating a book with a predetermined theme but later changed his mind and expanded the topic, for f. 2<sup>r</sup> includes a second heading ‘A Booke of Cookery’ which is the subject covered until f. 22<sup>v</sup>. After this, the book switches to medical recipes. Unrelated to either cookery or medicine, gardening tips (1<sup>v</sup>, 24<sup>f</sup>) as well as brief notes on weights and measures are also included. The dating has been established as 1606/1607 as some entries were evidently modified or added after 20<sup>th</sup> January 1606.

*Harley MS 2389*

The British Library online catalogue describes this manuscript as ‘a commonplace or household book, containing c. 600 medical recipes and charms’.<sup>49</sup> Different hands appear throughout the manuscript, and while it could be possible perhaps to identify one or two of them, it is not made explicitly clear to whom each one belongs. The book contains ii + 78 + i folios, measuring c. 15.5 cm. wide and 21.6 cm. high. It has modern foliation only, and leaves and quires are mounted on

---

<sup>47</sup> It is possible that these leaves were reused from another book, as the red numbering begins at 163.

<sup>48</sup> London, British Library Sloane MS 556, 1<sup>v</sup>.1-4.

<sup>49</sup> ‘Harley MS 2389’, in *Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.

guards, within a modern British Library binding.<sup>50</sup> The folios are filled with single columns of approximately 18-26 lines, written in a cursive English secretary script,<sup>51</sup> and various symbols, words, and signatures, perhaps part of calligraphy exercises, appear in the blank spaces. Again, a great variety of material has made its way into this household book, including, as the description states, medical recipes and charms, but also methods for catching fish and fairly detailed and extensive instructions for grafting fruit trees (64<sup>r</sup>-65<sup>r</sup>). It is dated to the sixteenth century, but two seventeenth-century owners (and authors) are clearly identified. The first is William Suffield who on f. 1<sup>r</sup> wrote upside down: ‘William Suffield of hanly castele oweth<sup>52</sup> this book’. The second is William’s brother Thomas Suffield, who on f. 78<sup>v</sup> wrote ‘Thomas Suffield his booke 1629’ and on f. 10<sup>r</sup> ‘Thomas Suffield hunc librum possidet: 1629, Thomas Suffield oweth me, And I hope his always to bee’. His signature also appears in various other locations throughout the book. The names of Anne, Susan, and John Suffield, clearly identified as the sisters and brother of Thomas and William, also appear on f. 78<sup>v</sup>, but they never seemed to take direct possession of the book. Studies on Hanley castle and the surrounding areas and some extant documentary evidence concerning the Suffield family make Thomas and William some of the better known household book owners. ‘Hanley castle’ appears to be the name given to the area formerly known simply as Hanley; the ‘castle’ was added in the sixteenth century.<sup>53</sup> The Suffields were clearly residents of the village, and William was in fact a husbandman, as is indicated on his will of 1605, currently held in the National Archives at Kew.<sup>54</sup> Several other documents containing records of leases, sales, and deeds of property in Hanley relating to both William and Thomas can also be found in various archival services.<sup>55</sup> Finally, the names of Edomond Suffield and Richard Moore are also mentioned in William’s note on f. 1<sup>r</sup>, but their relationship to the rest

---

<sup>50</sup> The leaves have been placed in the following gatherings: i<sup>3</sup>, ii<sup>4</sup>, iii<sup>6</sup>, f. 13, iv-xvi<sup>4</sup>, xvii<sup>6</sup>, xviii<sup>6-2</sup> missing central bifolium, xix<sup>4</sup>, ‘Harley MS 2389’, *Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.

<sup>51</sup> ‘Harley MS 2389’, *Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.

<sup>52</sup> This could possibly be a misspelling for owneth.

<sup>53</sup> J. Toomey, ‘A Medieval Woodland Manor: Hanley Castle, Worcestershire’, D.Phil. thesis, University of Birmingham 1997, 1.

<sup>54</sup> ‘PROB 11/105/461’, in *The National Archives Kew Discovery Catalogue*, at <http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D941043>.

<sup>55</sup> These can be found by searching ‘William Suffield’ or ‘Thomas Suffield’ in *The National Archives Kew Discovery Catalogue*, at <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/>. Unfortunately neither man appears in the Oxford Dictionary of National Biography.

of the Suffields is not indicated and it is unclear whether or not they owned or contributed to the book at any time.

*Lansdowne MS 101/8 and Lansdowne MS 101/9*

Both of these manuscripts are part of a collection of papers known as the Burghley papers, which were collected by Lord Burghley, Elizabeth I's Secretary of State.<sup>56</sup> They comprise a total of fifty-one items, written in different hands, and range in date from 1555-1596. These include various letters or copies of letters, a genealogical table of the first twelve Caesars and their families, notes on the quality of a military engine, and notes on usury, amongst many others. Item number eight constitutes a treatise on the management of vines and grapes and is composed of seven leaves measuring c. 21 cm. wide and 31 cm. high, with the modern foliation of ff. 36<sup>r</sup>-42<sup>r</sup>. There is neither an author nor a specific date, but the treatise has been included within the general date range of 1555-1596. It is written in ink on paper in a rather spidery hand, with the first word of each entry larger than the rest.

Item number nine is an assorted collection of 'Certayne especiall notes for ffishes, / Conyes, Pigeons, Artochokes, Strawberries / Muske Millons (melons) Pompons° Roses Cheryes / and other fruite trees',<sup>57</sup> on six leaves. A type of 'title-page' has been added at the back of the item,<sup>58</sup> upon which it was written: '1578 Dr Martyn's advice for gardening, orchards, parks'. The leaves are slightly smaller than item number 8, measuring c. 20.3 cm wide and 30.2 cm high, and were given the modern foliation of ff. 43<sup>r</sup>-48<sup>r</sup>. It is also written in ink on paper, in a fairly neat hand, with the title for each sub-section nicely centred on the folio. While these papers are not consistent with the usual style of the household book in that the owner did not necessarily write the entries himself, they are still relevant to this discussion as they form a private collection of information that was deemed interesting or important to the owner and could be re-read and used at a later date.

---

<sup>56</sup> Lord Burghley allegedly had a very strong interest in gardening. Strong, *The Renaissance Garden*, 52.

<sup>57</sup> London, British Library Lansdowne MS 101/9, 43<sup>r</sup>.1-4.

<sup>58</sup> Such 'title pages' seem to have been added at the end of each item, perhaps as a way for Lord Burghley to catalogue his collection of papers.

*Add MS 61822*

This manuscript is kept under special access at the British Library due to the fact that it contains one of only three extant manuscript copies of Philip Sidney's sonnets published under the title *Astrophel and Stella*. The manuscript as a whole was studied by William Ringler in 1950, and his seemingly unpublished article entitled 'A Description of 61822 by William Ringler jr.' is now kept with the manuscript. As he states, 'from the contents it is apparent that the manuscript was a commonplace book written at various times between 1564-1605 by two different members of a family named Briton who held property in Kelston'.<sup>59</sup> It is likely that the pair were father and son, as a short family record on f. 120<sup>r</sup> provides the birth date of June 1564 for 'my sonne William Briton'. While the father, John Briton, was probably the original owner of the book, according to Ringler it is his son who wrote the majority of the entries.<sup>60</sup> More information could presumably be found about the Briton family as genealogical notes on the family are kept at the Somerset Heritage Centre, and birth records can be found in the parish archives at Kelston. William Briton's will is also kept at the National Archives of Kew, on which he is identified as a 'gentleman of Kelston'.<sup>61</sup>

The household book includes court memoranda, customs of the monastery of Shaftesbury, law precedents, pithy sentences, a Latin credo, and domestic memoranda (including financial records), among others. More importantly for the present purpose, however, it also contains two lengthy entries on crop husbandry (ff. 55<sup>r</sup>-62<sup>v</sup> and ff. 104<sup>v</sup>-109<sup>f</sup>),<sup>62</sup> a short entry on grafting (f. 113<sup>r</sup>), as well as lists of 'the trees grafted in Kelston orchard' in 1588, 1589 and 1593 (ff. 114<sup>r</sup>, 115<sup>v</sup>, 116<sup>r</sup>, and 120<sup>v</sup>). The lists of grafted trees were written at the back of the book and then the volume was turned upside down and restarted from the other side. It is the largest of the household books at c. 24 cm. wide, 37 cm. high, and 3.5 cm. thick, with a total of 120 folios with modern foliation. It was contemporarily bound in calf over oak boards and

---

<sup>59</sup> Ringler, 'A Description of 61822 by William Ringler jr.', 1950, 3.

<sup>60</sup> *Ibid.*, 3.

<sup>61</sup> 'PROB 11/175/115', in *The National Archives*, at <http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D872000>.

<sup>62</sup> Many entries in the second set of 'rules' (ff. 104<sup>v</sup>-109<sup>f</sup>) are repetitions of those in the first set. They are organised in a more logical manner, however, thanks to the use of sub-headings.

subsequently re-backed,<sup>63</sup> and at one time had two brass clasps keeping it shut, although these are sadly no longer functional. It is written in ink on paper in a fairly difficult cursive script, with many notes appearing in the large margins. It is definitely one of the most impressive household books, and one of the most interesting in terms of dating, as specific years inscribed in the marginal notes allow one to see exactly when an entry was written or modified, giving a real sense of life and functionality to the book.

#### *MS Ferguson 150*

This is a fascinating little manuscript, measuring no more than 10 cm. wide and 15 cm. high, bound in its original vellum cover with nothing but the word ‘Secret’ written on the spine. It contains viii + 90 + i pages, with original pagination beginning at 175 and ending at 353. The first twelve pages constitute an index written in a later hand and sewn into the binding.<sup>64</sup> Throughout, the titles of the entries are written very neatly and clearly in ink, but are followed by lines of very minuscule text. There is no indication of the author or specific date of creation, but it has been catalogued by the University of Glasgow as dating between 1599 and 1699.<sup>65</sup> The year 1642 does, however, appear in a marginal note on p. 205, suggesting that at least some of it was written in the first half of the seventeenth century. It contains all kinds of interesting household recipes and advice, as well as instructions on the maintenance of firearms (including detailed sketches), a table on secret writing, a love potion, and two and a half pages on gardening advice (pp. 272-274). While the majority of the book is written in French, seemingly arbitrary entries are written in Italian. Unfortunately, there appears to be no information on its provenance to help explain this matter.

#### *Français 19087*

I was unfortunately unable to see this document in person, but instead received a reproduction of a selection of its folios. According to the online catalogue of the Bibliothèque Nationale de France, it measures 28 cm. by 20.3 cm. and is covered in a

---

<sup>63</sup> ‘Add MS 61822’, in *Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.

<sup>64</sup> See ‘MS Ferguson 150’, in *University of Glasgow Special Collections Manuscripts Catalogue*, at <http://special.lib.gla.ac.uk/manuscripts/search/>.

<sup>65</sup> ‘MS Ferguson 150’, *Special Collections Manuscripts Catalogue*.

half-binding.<sup>66</sup> It is written on paper and contains i + 33 folios, with what is likely to be modern foliation.<sup>67</sup> It appears to be written in ink, with centred sub-titles and large left hand margins. The majority of the manuscript is in French, although at least one entry appears in Italian. The contents are a mixture of notes on managing horses, criminal law, medical recipes as well gardening advice (ff. I, 1-8, 33<sup>v</sup>). Most of the entries, including the sections on gardening (the first of which was copied from Gorgole de Corne's *Traicté de la manière d'enter, planter & nourrir arbres selon nostre climat*)<sup>68</sup> have been associated with Claude de Bellièvre I<sup>er</sup>.<sup>69</sup> Part of a very old and high-ranking French family, Claude was a very well educated man and became two-time county magistrate of Lyon, and first president of the parliament of Grenoble.<sup>70</sup> He lived from 1487-1557, making this the earliest of the manuscripts presented here.

*Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë*

Again unable to access this manuscript in person, I referred to a printed reproduction of the text published in 1893 by M. R. de Laigue, available on the Gallica database of the Bibliothèque Nationale de France. Very little information about the original manuscript is included in his annotated version of the text other than that he discovered it in the archives of the castle of la Graë, and that there were many different authors, as was clear from obvious differences in handwriting.<sup>71</sup> It takes up twelve pages (pp. 3-14) of de Laigue's edition and is overall very different from the other manuscripts presented here. This book focuses mainly on recording family events such as births, deaths, and marriages, rather than household recipes and advice, but on the very last page, eight gardening tips are noted. As de Laigue

<sup>66</sup> See 'Français 19087', in *Le catalogue BNF archives et manuscrits*.  
<http://archivesetmanuscrits.bnf.fr/>.

<sup>67</sup> Again according to the catalogue, the pages have been reorganised in an out-of-order numerical sequence in the following order : I, 1-8, 23, 22, 21, 13-20, 12, 11, 10, 9, 24-33, 'Français 19087', *BNF archives et manuscrits*.

<sup>68</sup> A full reproduction of de Corne's text can be found on the Gallica database of the Bibliothèque Nationale de France as a part of *Quatre traictes utiles et délectables de l'agriculture*, ed. C. l'Angelier, Paris 1560.

<sup>69</sup> The handwriting at the end of the book is very different from that at the beginning. This would normally suggest that there were two different authors, but according to the catalogue of the Bibliothèque Nationale, it all belongs to de Bellièvre, 'Français 19087', *BNF archives et manuscrits*.

<sup>70</sup> F.-A. Aubert, *Dictionnaire de la noblesse*, vol. II, Paris 1771, 274.

<sup>71</sup> de Laigue, 'Annotations', in *LDR La Landelle*, 1.

indicates, the document covers the period from 1569-1602 and despite originally stating that it was created by many authors, suggests that it was compiled by two men: started by René Rolland, half-brother of the Lady of la Graë, and finished by his step-brother Claude de la Landelle, lord of la Graë. Thanks to the countless dates included, it is another wonderful document enabling the reader to witness the passing of time in the life of a family in the sixteenth century.

*Add MS 20709*

The final manuscript assessed here is a tiny little duodecimo, measuring c. 9.2 cm. wide and 13.7 cm. high, and containing i + 74 + iv folios total. So many centuries later this household book appears to be still in progress as numerous folios are left blank,<sup>72</sup> and others have only a couple of lines written in the middle or at the bottom of the page. It is a perfect example of the method of compilation of a household book. It is written in a very legible hand in ink on paper, and this appears to be a more lavish household book as the paper is edged with gold. As mentioned above it includes entries in French (mainly copied from an early French treatise entitled *Du gaignage des terres*), English, and Latin (mainly excerpts from Classical works on husbandry), and dates to c. 1571. Other than the main entries on gardening (which focus on agriculture, ff. 2, 3<sup>v</sup>, 4, 5, 9<sup>r</sup>, 12, 15<sup>r</sup>, 34<sup>r</sup>, 37<sup>r</sup>, 42<sup>v</sup>, 43<sup>r</sup>), various medical recipes in different hands have also been inserted in seemingly arbitrary locations. William Lambarde (1536-1601), the antiquarian, politician and writer, author of the *Archaionomia*, is believed to be the primary author of this household book.<sup>73</sup> Indeed two medical recipes end with the phrase ‘probatum est W.L.’, most likely referring to Lambarde himself. Various other sets of initials and names appear throughout the book in similar phrases, including that of Multon Lambarde, William’s son, suggesting that this household book was also passed down from father to son. The names Phillip Jewel, O. Wood, and W. Mills, are also present but, once again, it is difficult to determine their relationship to the Lambardes and this household book.

Thus, it is possible to see that these household books truly did come in all shapes and sizes and included a vast array of information. As for authorship and

---

<sup>72</sup> Indeed only 48 of the 74 folios have been written on; these are the only foliated leaves.

<sup>73</sup> ‘Add MS 20709’, in *Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.



ownership, of the ten books under consideration, six have identified authors, two have an identified owner, and one has potential owners, all of which are men. The majority were fairly high-ranking and well educated, seemingly fitting the mould of men from the upper social classes who were beginning to engage, or at least become interested, in the management of their own land. Furthermore, it is very interesting to see household books that did remain in the same family for generations and were compiled by fathers, sons, and brothers. Sadly, some of these authors will remain nothing more than a name until further studies succeed in bringing to light details of their lives, and some will remain unknown perhaps forever. Nevertheless, they still offer wonderful snapshots of daily life and the passing of time in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

### Chapter 3 – The advice

For every owner and author of the above household books, compiling gardening tips seems to have been done for the purpose of producing bigger and better plants, be it literally growing larger vegetables, or having trees that could produce fruit for many months. This is quite an understandable desire, as bettering the quality of one's plants, be it in size, taste, or quantity is still sought by most gardeners to this day; there is always room for improvement in the garden! Therefore, the majority of instructions noted down concern when and how to plant in order to achieve this goal. While the specific subject matter varies from book to book, two dominant themes can be seen throughout. The first, included by over half the authors, is the necessity of suitable earth and good fertiliser, the precise characteristics of which differ depending on the plants' needs.

Indeed, the first entry on husbandry in Add 6 opens with 'signes to knowe the difference of grownds',<sup>74</sup> and even includes useful instructions for testing the land's fertility: 'yf the erthe beinge wrought with moysture in the forme of a ba[ll / shall (being thrown from you) remaine whole without / crackinge or cleve (stick) to the fingers in the manner of pitche / it argueth a good & fertile earthe'.<sup>75</sup> It then goes on to describe the earth most suited to different crops, for example: 'a dry erthe is best for all kynd of Rootes, but a fatt & moyst / erthe breedeth best cabbedge; oyneons, lettice & suche like'.<sup>76</sup> Lansdowne 8 provides many specifications for the best type of soil for vines, such as 'a myxte clay is good for vines but clay alone is a greate enemy / to them blacke or redde sandy grounde is good myngled with clay'.<sup>77</sup> The authors clearly realised that such ideal land was not always possible to come by and so noted down advice on how to improve their soil when it was far from perfect. Better productivity could be achieved by working the earth at different times of year depending on its characteristics, e.g. 'the grounde where you intende to sett your vines yf it be / drye muste be lauboured and digged in September or October / if it be moste (moist) in february or marche'.<sup>78</sup> This could also be achieved through the use of

---

<sup>74</sup> London, British Library Add MS 61822, f. 55<sup>r</sup>, marginal note 1.

<sup>75</sup> Ibid., f. 55<sup>r</sup>.7-10.

<sup>76</sup> Ibid., f. 55<sup>r</sup>.11-12.

<sup>77</sup> London, British Library Lansdowne 101/8, f. 36<sup>r</sup>.39-41.

<sup>78</sup> Ibid., f. 36<sup>v</sup>.11-13. See also Add 6, ff. 55<sup>v</sup>, *passim*.

manure or other natural fertilisers.<sup>79</sup> ‘Pigeon’s dung’, as it is so frequently referred to, seems to have been the favoured fertiliser, appearing in four different household books. The author of Add 6 also thought very highly of ‘vegetable salt’ of which he included lengthy discussions and comparisons to pigeon’s dung,<sup>80</sup> and the author of Add 2 set store by marl.<sup>81</sup> One’s method of applying manure to the soil was equally as important as the type of manure one used, as Lansdowne 8 suggests: ‘whan you donge<sup>o</sup> your vines, to litle vines put litle / donge<sup>o</sup> and to the greate more often donging<sup>o</sup> maketh the vine fruitful’.<sup>82</sup> Egerton further expresses the importance of the timing of fertilising: ‘Donge<sup>o</sup> your lande whilest the moone decreseth: viz from the full to the change: for doing in contrarye ye / shall finde more increace of weedes to come thereby’.<sup>83</sup>

The second dominant trend that can be found in these household books, visible in the previous quote, is the idea that gardening should be done according to the phases of the moon and movement of the stars. Astrological gardening is a method of gardening still used to this day,<sup>84</sup> and is one that has been practised for centuries, first appearing in the Western world in Hesiod’s *Works and Days*.<sup>85</sup> Indeed, the moon was believed to control the moisture in the earth, and more specifically the rise and fall of

---

<sup>79</sup> Add 6, ff. 58<sup>r</sup>, 60<sup>r</sup>, 60<sup>v</sup>; London, British Library Add MS 20709, ff. 9<sup>f</sup>, 15<sup>r</sup>, 42<sup>v</sup>; Lansdowne 8, ff. 37<sup>v</sup>, 38<sup>v</sup>; Ferguson, 273; Lansdowne 9, f. 45<sup>v</sup>.

<sup>80</sup> Add 6, ff. 56<sup>v</sup>, 60<sup>r</sup>, 60<sup>v</sup>, 62<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>81</sup> He also mentions a different type used in France, so-called ‘Marne’. Add 2, ff. 9<sup>f</sup>, 42<sup>v</sup>.

<sup>82</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 38<sup>v</sup>.33-34.

<sup>83</sup> Egerton, f. 86<sup>r</sup>.1-2. Similar advice is also included in Add 6, f. 58<sup>r</sup>.40-46.

<sup>84</sup> Lunar gardening calendars depicting the lunar cycle, the sign of the zodiac present each day and the activities that should be done accordingly (e.g. watering, pruning) are still being published and can easily be found online. See E. Pepe, *A Guide to Lunar Gardening 2015*, 2015; G. Sasias, *Cultiver son jardin avec la lune 2015*, Chamalières 2014; J. Paungger and T. Poppe, *Das Mondjahr 2015*, Munich 2014; and <http://www.moontime.co.za/> which provides a guide to lunar gardening in South Africa. Also, Emerson College in East Sussex still offers courses on biodynamic gardening, that is, planting according to the moon.

<sup>85</sup> J. Cashford, *The Moon*, London 2003, 229; For example Hesiod writes: ‘when Zeus has completed sixty wintry days after the solstice, the star Arcturus is first seen rising [...] After this Pandion’s daughter, the dawn-lamenting swallow, rises into the light for human beings, and the spring begins anew. Forestall her, prune the vines first: for that way is better.’ Hesiod, *Works*, 2 vols, ed. and trans. G. Most, Cambridge 2006, 133.

sap in plants.<sup>86</sup> The moon was seen as the source of all growth as according to the old agrarian cosmology her light influenced the natural world to a greater extent than that of the sun.<sup>87</sup> Therefore, different activities were assigned to specific phases of the moon: cutting down trees, picking fruits and vegetables, and harvesting crops should be done during a waning moon, while planting, sowing, and grafting should be done during a waxing moon.<sup>88</sup> Eight out of ten household books make mention of the importance of respecting the phases of the moon.<sup>89</sup> For some, it is but a single line: ‘toute ante° et toute plante en croissant et au montant de la lune’,<sup>90</sup> for others a little more detail is included: ‘it is good to graffe (graft) iij or iiij dayes afore þe change of þe mone / and for to plant all maner plants, & set them in þe fyrst daye / of þe change, þe seconde or the thyrde, for thes be the / best dayes therfore’,<sup>91</sup> and finally for the owners of Egerton and Français, this practice seemed to play a pivotal role in their gardening techniques, with references to it occurring multiple times in their household books, and both making sure to include the moon’s relation to the zodiac signs as well.<sup>92</sup>

Beyond these two dominant trends, the entries about gardening generally fall, as mentioned above, into the three major subcategories of agriculture (including management of vines), arboriculture, and olericulture. Some household books tend to focus on one category while others include a little bit of each. Floriculture appears only very briefly in one or two household books and is not a primary concern for any of the authors.

---

<sup>86</sup> Cashford, *The Moon*, 226, 229; S. Lunais, *Recherches sur la lune*, Leiden 1979, 49, 50.

<sup>87</sup> Cashford, *The Moon*, 229; P. Camporesi, *The Magic Harvest*, trans. J. K. Hall, Cambridge 1993, 70.

<sup>88</sup> Cashford, *The Moon*, 229; Lunais, *Recherches sur la lune*, 51. Other activities besides gardening were also associated with astrology; cutting one’s hair and fingernails, shearing sheep and gelding animals should all be done under a waning moon. M. Préaud, *Les effets du soleil*, Paris 1995, 11; Cashford, *The Moon*, 229.

<sup>89</sup> Add 2 and Ferguson are the only ones that do not.

<sup>90</sup> LDR la Landelle, 14.11-12. ‘all grafting and all planting during the waxing and rising of the moon’. See also Sloane, f. 24<sup>r</sup>.16-17 and Lansdowne 8, f. 38<sup>r</sup>.15-17.

<sup>91</sup> London, British Library Harley MS 2389, f. 65<sup>r</sup>.23-26. See also Add 6, f. 58<sup>r</sup>.26-30.

<sup>92</sup> Egerton, ff. 85<sup>v</sup>, 86<sup>r</sup>, *passim*; See also Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France Français 19087, ff. 3<sup>r</sup>, 33<sup>v</sup>, *passim*.

### *Agriculture*

When it comes to agriculture, the advice that these individuals seemed to need most and thus resorted to writing down, concerned working the land in preparation for sowing. Specific methods and times for fallowing<sup>o</sup>, twifallowing<sup>o</sup>, and digging appear again and again. Indeed their notes demonstrate the lack of certainty they perhaps felt regarding such a complex process that could be influenced by factors as fickle as the wind: ‘sowing of wheat a furrowe<sup>o</sup> I take it to be best, in these sorts of lands / viz: in all stonerushe<sup>o</sup> & light land, & in all hevy land that will not / lye longe wette [...] it is not good to digge or till<sup>o</sup> the grownd the wynd being / in the northe but the warme sowth wynds do open the / powers of the erthe.’<sup>93</sup> Including a little rhyme could perhaps also help one remember the tricky subtleties involved in the art of fallowing<sup>o</sup>: ‘when you plough for barlye fallowe<sup>o</sup>, / make a deep & square forrowe<sup>o</sup>: But / when you plough to sowe Barley, then / let your forrow<sup>o</sup> be fleet (shallow) & narrowe’.<sup>94</sup> Next, deciding on the best time to sow one’s crops seemed equally complex but was especially important, as a heavy storm at the wrong time could prove disastrous:

seimes (semez) vostre terre par temps, issint (ainsi) que la / terre soit assise (établie), & le blee enracine devant / le fort yver: autrement, si grand pluy chise (tombe), / deins (dans les) -8- iours apres la semence, & puis veigne (vient) / gelu (gelée) -2- ou -3- iours, la gelee percera la terre / (si el (elle) est croisse (creusée)) tant profonde que le eaw (l’eau) est / entre (entrée), & issint le ble quest (qu’est) tender periera.<sup>95</sup>

In accordance with the belief in astrological gardening mentioned above, sowing when the stars were not properly aligned could be equally problematic: ‘yf thow sowe barly [...] let / the starrs named *vergiliae* or the seven starrs<sup>96</sup> be sett before / thow commytt thy seede to the erthe, for many have sowen / before the setting of the starre

---

<sup>93</sup> Add 6, ff. 61<sup>v</sup>.13-15, 55<sup>v</sup>.30-32.

<sup>94</sup> Add 2, f. 5<sup>f</sup>.1-4.

<sup>95</sup> Add 2, f. 15<sup>f</sup>.2-8. ‘Sow your land at such a time that the land may be settled, and the wheat may have taken root before the winter; otherwise, if a great rain falls in the 8 days after sowing and then a frost occurs for 2 or 3 days, the ice will pierce the soil (if it is dug), as far down as the rainwater penetrated, and thus the tender wheat will perish.’ A similar entry appears in Add 6 (f. 57<sup>v</sup>.15-18). In fact, concerns about the weather and proper timing for working the land appear repeatedly throughout Add 6 (e.g. ff. 58<sup>f</sup>, 58<sup>v</sup>, 104<sup>v</sup>-105<sup>f</sup>). This is also one of the main concerns in Lansdowne 8 (*passim*).

<sup>96</sup> Both *vergiliae* and ‘seven starrs’ are alternate names for the ‘Pleiades’.

*maia* (one of the Pleiades) & have benne / deceived with otes (oats) & light corne'.<sup>97</sup> What is perhaps most interesting about Add 6 is the fact that the author clearly experimented with different methods and times of sowing and returned to his household book at a later date to record the outcomes. The note that 'barly proved ile (ill) in cold land in ano 1596 a great raine commyng in maye yet I finde by experience that late sowing in hevly land proveth best for the most parte'<sup>98</sup> is one of many such reminders peppered throughout his household book's entries on gardening.<sup>99</sup>

Furthermore although adding manure and fertiliser to increase the productivity of the soil was common practice, paying close attention to the removal of nefarious substances that might be in the ground was also encouraged: 'the thirde [way to prepare your land for vines] is in trenching your grounde / throughe out two fote depe to thentent (the intent) it may be purged / frome stubbes<sup>o</sup> rotes (roots) of tres and hurtfull herbes.'<sup>100</sup> William Briton, author of Add 6, was especially careful to note down the harmful nature of poppies in furrowes<sup>o</sup> ('note at weeding tyme if you happen to fynd popy in the furrowes<sup>o</sup> weed it owt / cleane; althoughe it seeme but smale for we fynd by experience that [...] / such popy as is but smale at mydsomer will wryde (grow, spread) into such great branches that it will eate & consume the wheat mightely by harvest tyme').<sup>101</sup> These household books also demonstrate how these individuals were being made aware, or were becoming aware through experience, that crop rotation was especially beneficial and that it was necessary, for example, to 'changer votre semail chaque an, al saint / mychael; car vous plus apportera la semail / que croist sur auter terre'.<sup>102</sup> Briton expands on this statement to say that:

to sowe pese in very light land ys best the first croppe, wheat or messlyne<sup>o</sup> the second, & barly the third, for the pese doth helpe to enrich the land & the often chainge of seed cawseth the better corne. yt decayethe the land & lessneth your croppe if ye sowe one land twyse together / either to wheat or to barly.<sup>103</sup>

<sup>97</sup> Add 6, ff. 55<sup>v</sup>.22-26, 107<sup>v</sup>.53-56.

<sup>98</sup> Ibid., f. 108<sup>r</sup>, marginal note 2.

<sup>99</sup> This is discussed further in the following chapter.

<sup>100</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 36<sup>v</sup>.16-18.

<sup>101</sup> Add 6, f. 62<sup>r</sup>.46-49.

<sup>102</sup> Add 2, f. 4<sup>r</sup>.2-4. 'change your crops every year at Michaelmas; for it will bring you a greater crop than on any other land.'

<sup>103</sup> Add 6, ff. 58<sup>r</sup>.35-39, 108<sup>r</sup>.41-45.

Finally, it is also worth noting that rarely did advice seem to be needed for crops such as wheat and barley after the fallowing<sup>o</sup>, tilling<sup>o</sup>, and sowing had been done; there is very little, if any, mention of keeping up a good growth, let alone harvesting one's crops. In terms of vines, however, a great deal of focus was placed on the maintenance, and protection of the plants, which is quite understandable as these were meant to last much longer than a crop of wheat. One of the tasks that seemed to require most advice was the pruning of vines, for which tips including time of year, manner, and desired outcome, were included in household books. Examples of all these tips can be seen in Lansdowne 8: 'in hote cuntres (countries) you may cutt your vines in October November or / februarye and marche [...] / in cold cuntreis in february and marche onely in temperate in all the / foresaid monethes (months)'; 'the brode (broad) croked (crooked) and weake braunches and those that growe in evil / places<sup>104</sup> muste be cutt away and also that braunche that groweth / betwix two armes of the vine'; and finally 'the soner you cutt your vine the soner it doth budde and bring / fourth moe (more) and greate braunches and more plentie of woode / and you cut them late they will budde late and so you shall / have less woode and moe grapes'.<sup>105</sup> This individual was also sure to include some advice on keeping vines healthy:

any thinge growinge nighe the vine hurteth it wherfor / it muste be digged or cutt away [...] In winter if you feare froste cut them lowe by the gronde / and kepe your truncke as lowe as you can for feare of colde wether. [...] If any kinde of wormes eate or hurte / your vines gather them and treade them under the gronde / under your fote or els burne them. [...] If the vine be wounded with the mattocke or corst (large cleaver) tie the wounde / close and put earth aboute it mingled with shepe or gots (goat's) donge<sup>o</sup>.<sup>106</sup>

Advice is also included on all steps of the process for making wine from the grapes of one's carefully tended vines, but other than a short entry on the differences between

---

<sup>104</sup> The individual who compiled these notes either must have copied them from another source or must have been familiar already with what was considered 'an evil place' for a weak branch to grow for no further explanation of this is offered.

<sup>105</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 38<sup>r</sup>.1-5; 9-11; 39-42. A tip on pruning vines also appears in Add 6, f. 55<sup>v</sup>.48-52.

<sup>106</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 39<sup>r</sup>.16-17, 25-27, 36-38, f. 39<sup>v</sup>.2-3. Somewhat surprisingly this is one of the only household books that offers advice on dealing with pests. Lansdowne 9 (47<sup>r</sup>-47<sup>v</sup>; see below) and Ferguson (273-274; see below) are the only other two that mention pests, both in regards to trees.

picking grapes during the waxing and waning of the moon,<sup>107</sup> these tips are not relevant to the present discussion.

### *Arboriculture*

Respecting the phases of the moon was not the only popular belief present in the gardening world. Indeed, arboriculture, and more specifically the art of grafting, has a long history in the genre of books of secrets, and was particularly linked to the belief in natural magic in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.<sup>108</sup> Natural magic was believed to be a process through which humans could reproduce the miraculous aspects of nature and its ultimate purpose was to perpetuate life.<sup>109</sup> Therefore, making fruits ripen out of season, preserving vegetables over the winter, and having flowers bloom earlier or later in the summer, all constituted acts of natural magic.<sup>110</sup> Such magic found its way into household books' advice on gardening. The author of Ferguson noted down instructions for having a variety of peaches come two months before other varieties,<sup>111</sup> and for making apricots ripen early.<sup>112</sup> He or she was also keen to remember that 'se vuoi far nascere i frutti senz'osso, quando il frutto è in fiore, / fa un pertuso (pertugio) nel ramo, che passi da una parte all'altra, ch'i frutti di quei / rami nasceranno sicuro senz'osso'.<sup>113</sup>

The Suffields, authors of *Harley*, while also including several entries on making fruit ripen early and last longer than its usual season (generally the goal was to make fruit last until Allhallowtide),<sup>114</sup> seemed very interested in changing the actual nature of their fruit, be it in flavour ('Ffor to make medlers<sup>o</sup> or cheryes swete as

<sup>107</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 40<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>108</sup> The tradition of books of secrets seems to have developed in Italy and quickly spread throughout Europe during the sixteenth century thanks to translations of works by Alessio Piemontese, Leonardo Fioravanti and Giambattista Della Porta. W. Eamon, *Science and the Secrets of Nature*, Princeton 1994, 5, 210, 251; Bushnell, *Green Desire*, 143.

<sup>109</sup> Eamon, *Science and Secrets*, 210; L. Orsi, 'Giovan Battista della Porta's *Villa* (1592) between tradition, reality and fiction', in *Annali di Storia moderna e contemporanea*, XI, 2005, pp. 11-66 (47).

<sup>110</sup> Eamon, *Science and Secrets*, 218-219; Bushnell, *Green Desire*, 143.

<sup>111</sup> Ferguson, 272.1-4. An entry for the same purpose also appears in *Harley* (f. 64<sup>r</sup>.11-13).

<sup>112</sup> Ferguson, 272.16-21.

<sup>113</sup> *Ibid.*, 272.6-8. 'if you want to grow fruits without stones, when the fruit is in flower, make a hole in the branch, that passes from one side to the other, the fruits of these branches will grow surely without stones.'

<sup>114</sup> *Harley*, *passim*.



spices’)<sup>115</sup> or in physical aspect (‘for to have halfe pere halfe apple’).<sup>116</sup> For these individuals, knowing exactly which trees to use in the grafting process was the most important element in creating these new-and-improved fruits. Most entries were short and simple, for example one on making apples ‘growe withowt blossoms’ stated nothing more than: ‘graffe them on a fygge tree’,<sup>117</sup> and in order to have cherries at Allhallowtide it seems all one needed to know was ‘graffe them in a mulberye tree or in a sage stocke’.<sup>118</sup> This idea of changing the nature of fruit is also visible in Lansdowne 9, in which the author wrote:

And if youe put in the hole [of the tree] so perced (pierced) all manner of spices / of ryche odour, as bawme (balm), Muske<sup>o</sup>, Ambre<sup>o</sup>, and such like: / the ffruite aswell in vertue, as in savour, will represente / the same effecte. [...] And to chaunge the colour, aswell as the taste, [some] will / laie in the same water, brasill (brazilwood), saunders (powdered sandalwood) saffron, or / Tournesale (sunflower), and infund (pour) the foresaid liquour in the clefte<sup>o</sup> / of the tree wherein yt shalbe graffed.<sup>119</sup>

Grafting certainly seemed to be very popular at the time.<sup>120</sup> William Briton, author of Add 6, even included lists of the fruit trees that were grafted in his orchard (including russet, green, and wynter queening apple varieties, among many others)<sup>121</sup> as well as those that were growing elsewhere on his land, for example ‘the tree that stands upmost there a great russet apple / the tree in the corner of the lower garden a

---

<sup>115</sup> Harley, f. 64<sup>r</sup>, 17-21.

<sup>116</sup> Ibid., f. 65<sup>r</sup>.10-16. Although it might not be known as natural magic anymore, this idea of transforming fruits and vegetables is a big part of the science of genetically modifying produce: take for example the creation of the pluot, aprium, plumcot, and tangelo.

<sup>117</sup> Harley, f. 64<sup>r</sup>.22.

<sup>118</sup> Ibid., f. 64<sup>r</sup>.24.

<sup>119</sup> Lansdowne 9, f. 46<sup>r</sup>.7-10, 15-18.

<sup>120</sup> Indeed, A. Huxley suggests that grafting became so popular because of gardeners who liked to experiment and became obsessed with the possibilities that grafting had to offer. Grafting was also very practical. It allowed one to quickly increase stock and control the strength and produce of a tree. A. Huxley, *An Illustrated History of Gardening*, London 1978, 214, 215. Quest-Ritson, on the other hand, suggests that the rise in popularity of grafting was due to increased hunger that spread throughout the European population. Fruits like medlars, which would not normally have been eaten because of their bitter taste, were being grafted with mulberries to make them sweeter and more edible. Quest-Ritson, *Culture and Cultivation*, 37.

<sup>121</sup> Add 6, ff. 114<sup>r</sup>, 115<sup>v</sup>. These are all varieties of apples still cultivated today.

dusan° of dorsetshere’,<sup>122</sup> making this an invaluable source for the history of grafting and history of fruit trees in England.

It is possible to see, however, that household book owners were interested in more than grafting and making trees produce extraordinary fruit. They wanted to be able to care properly for their trees and help them grow better. Only Claude de Bellièvre, author of *Français*, seemed concerned about the manner in which one had to prepare the soil for planting trees, copying instructions that said:

‘ont (on) doit faire fosses en terre sec et plain dardille° / pour planter arbres de six piedz de parfont (profond) affin quilz puyssent myeulx Recevoir et tenir l’eau [...] aucuns (certains) arbres desirent lieux chaulx (chaud), comme le dattier / et aucuns, l’air froit comme le chasteigner (châtaignier) [...] / aucuns terres grasses comme le figuier et le meurier (mûrier); aucuns terre maigre et / sablonneuse comme le dattier et le pin’.<sup>123</sup>

This suggests perhaps that the others already had pre-existing trees and were not looking to plant new ones. In terms of caring for trees then, besides *Français*, in which notes on watering were saved (‘les arbres se veullent arrouser tant comme ilz croissent / jusque ace quilz (à ce qu’ils) facent fruit et comme ilz commence / a faire fruit ne les arrousez plus et laisse faire a l’arbre’),<sup>124</sup> a lot of the focus was placed on preventing trees from getting diseases, or curing diseases once they had already struck. To prevent the rotting of trees, the author of *Lansdowne 9* included the advice to ‘suffer no two to stand under, or even with the levell / of your waters, but farre above, for ells the water will / cause them to moze (moss), and rotte asuredly’<sup>125</sup> and if rot had already taken hold then it was necessary to:

make after Martilmas (Martinmas) a hole with a percer (gimlet) under the / place that rotteth, that the water which cause the rottinge of trees may issue forthe. Or cleave the greatest roote of the tree, and putt into / the clifte° a thinne slatt of harde stone, and lett the / roote

<sup>122</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 114<sup>r</sup>.39-40.

<sup>123</sup> *Français*, ff. 1<sup>v</sup>.25-27, 1<sup>r</sup>.8-13. ‘one must dig pits in dry land full of clay to plant trees six feet deep so that they might better absorb and retain water [...] some trees need warm locations, like the date, and others cold air, like the chestnut [...] some need fat soils, like the fig and the mulberry; others, need lean and sandy soil, like the date and the pine’.

<sup>124</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 1<sup>r</sup>.20-22. ‘trees want to be watered as long as they are growing until they produce fruit, and when they begin to produce fruit, do not water them anymore and let the tree be.’

<sup>125</sup> *Lansdowne 9*, f. 46<sup>v</sup>.6-8.

stand open till about th'end of winter, and the / said stone to remayne  
still in him, then putte plentye / of fatt, and riche earthe.<sup>126</sup>

When caring for orange trees in particular, the author of Ferguson recorded this special warning:

Quand on cognoistra qu'ilz voudron fleurir, il faut bien prendre  
garde aux / petites araignées qui se metten dessouse la feuille qui  
joiend le pied de / la fleur pour les ostee, en coullans le doigt le  
long de la feuille pour / la nettoyée et les faire choir (tomber),  
pour ne quelles les mangen & les font / tomber.<sup>127</sup>

Finally, advice for other less common tasks that could be required when taking care of trees including how to dig up trees and replant them, how to keep trees short and small, and how to prune them when they were old, also make appearances.<sup>128</sup>

Ever concerned with the influence of the moon, the author of Egerton also noted that if one should be in need of removing trees, this should be done 'in the firste quarter of the mone being in Taurus, in februarye'.<sup>129</sup>

### *Olericulture*

Along with the overall increase in gentlemen gardeners in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, another notable change that occurred was the increased demand for vegetables. While eating meat had previously been favoured by the upper classes, by the late sixteenth century, vegetables were eaten in abundance at all levels of society.<sup>130</sup> It is no surprise then, that advice on growing vegetables appears frequently in household books. The author of Ferguson, for example, noted down the entire process for growing rhubarb:

Il faut semer au printemps la vraine<sup>131</sup> de Rheubarbe dans des vais- /  
seaux de terre trouëz par dessouls et emplis de bonne terre grasse. Et  
tous / les jours les arrouser sur la vespre (en soirée). [...] La seconde /  
année Il la faut transplanter en bonne terre grasse exposée au midy

<sup>126</sup> Ibid., ff. 46<sup>r</sup>.25 - 46<sup>v</sup>.3. A similar suggestion can be seen in Ferguson, 272.12-15.

<sup>127</sup> Ferguson, 273.28 - 274.3 'When one notices that they will be about to flower, one has to be careful of the little spiders that sit beneath the leaf that joins the foot of the flower [and] remove them by running one's finger along the leaf to clean it and to make them fall, so that they do not eat [the flowers] and make them fall.'

<sup>128</sup> Français, ff. 3<sup>v</sup>, 4<sup>r</sup>, 5<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>129</sup> Egerton, f. 85<sup>v</sup>.2

<sup>130</sup> Quest-Ritson, *Culture and Cultivation*, 37; S. Campbell, *A History of Kitchen Gardening*, London 2005, 108.

<sup>131</sup> This is likely a misspelling of 'graine'.

(Sud). Et la / laisser en ce mesme lieu. La troiziesme année elle portera graine.<sup>132</sup>

One of the primary concerns for the authors who included entries on olericulture was knowing the best time to plant. In order to keep track of this, the authors of both Français and Sloane created a month by month calendar of when vegetables could or should be planted, and the author of Egerton listed the months relevant to a select few vegetables. These appear, for example, as: ‘Aoust: Espinars laictuez. oignons, et choux verts / pour les manger tendres’,<sup>133</sup> ‘Marche: Cowcumbers, mellons, Gowardes (gourds), Savery, Cabbiges, carretts and Artychokes, / Margerome (marjoram),<sup>134</sup> or ‘Turnepes in maye’.<sup>135</sup> Again, because these household books were so personal, it is difficult to draw comparisons and similarities between their planting calendars as the authors did not include all of the same plants depending on their preferences. Onions appear in all three of the aforementioned household books, but Français suggests planting them in January, February, March, August and September, whereas Egerton suggests planting them only in February and March, and Sloane only mentions that onions should be picked in May, but never indicates when they should be planted.<sup>136</sup>

Another one of the main concerns for vegetable growers was making their produce ‘greate’ in size. For the la Landelles, this process involved nothing more than a little bit of grafting: ‘antez° du fruict en son mesme, plus l’anterrez et plus sera gros’,<sup>137</sup> and for the author of Egerton careful preparation of the soil was all that was needed in order to ‘make very greate radishes’:

Dig your ground 2-3 specten deep so that the moulds may bee very soft & hollow / then take a walking stick as big as your finger put yt a foote downe into those soft moulds / then put a radish seede into that deepe hole, cover yt not above one intch & let the rest / of the

<sup>132</sup> Ferguson, 271.5-10. ‘One has to plant Rhubarb seeds in the spring in clay vessels with holes on the bottom and filled with good fat soil. And water them every day in the evening. [...] The second year they must be transplanted into good fat soil facing South. And leave it in this same location. The third year it will bear seeds.’

<sup>133</sup> Français, f. 33<sup>v</sup>.11-12. ‘August: Spinach, lettuces, onions, and green cabbages for eating tender’.

<sup>134</sup> Sloane, f. 24<sup>r</sup>.5-6.

<sup>135</sup> Egerton, f. 85<sup>v</sup>.7.

<sup>136</sup> Français, f. 33<sup>v</sup>; Egerton, f. 85<sup>v</sup>; Sloane, f. 24<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>137</sup> LDR la Landelle, 14.20-21. ‘graft a fruit in its own kind, then plant it and it will be bigger’. The author of Harley also resorted to grafting to increase the size of medlars; f. 64<sup>v</sup>.23-26.

hole bee hollow that hollownes will make the radish grow monstrous greate.<sup>138</sup>

Indeed, growing fruits and vegetables so that they might be ‘monstrous greate’ was seen as a way to separate oneself from peasants, since big fruits were signs of a wealthy and elite garden.<sup>139</sup> Although it is difficult to determine the social status of all these household book owners for sure, as mentioned above it is most likely that they were mostly individuals of the upper classes. Growing large vegetables thus would have been a way for them to maintain tradition and uphold this particular status symbol. Besides radishes, artichokes also seemed to be a favourite for increasing in size,<sup>140</sup> and tips for doing so were noted in both Lansdowne 9 and Egerton. In both cases, fertilising, pruning, and careful timing all appear to be vital (although there are discrepancies between the two manuscripts), and the process is seemingly more complicated than was suggested by LDR la Landelle:

To make your Artochoke great, youe must first make / your mould° good, and helpe the same with [...] / shepes dunge or of pigeons. Next youe / must provyde slippes of a good kynd, thirdly to remove / and chaunge the Artochoke him selfe at the least every / third yere as ye doe the saffron ground. ffourthly to pull / away the slippes in Marche, and agayne a monthe befoer / michaelmas. Last of all to suffer but one Apple to / growe on a roote.<sup>141</sup>

While it is unclear whether increasing the size of one’s produce constituted an act of natural magic, it is certain that for the author of Lansdowne 9 at least, the garden was also subject to such fancies, as he wrote down advice for making strawberries bear fruit after Michaelmas, and melons taste like roses.<sup>142</sup>

---

<sup>138</sup> Egerton, f. 10<sup>v</sup>.18-21.

<sup>139</sup> F. Quellier, ‘Le jardin fruitier-potager’, in *Revue d’histoire moderne et contemporaine*, III, 2004, pp. 66-78 (73).

<sup>140</sup> The artichoke was a favourite vegetable for growing overall. Native of the Mediterranean, it had only just recently been discovered that it acclimatised well to the North. It would have been the perfect addition to private gardens of members of the upper class who were so fascinated by exotic plants. J. Hale, *The Civilization of Europe in the Renaissance*, London 1993, 518.

<sup>141</sup> Lansdowne 9, f. 45<sup>r</sup>.3-11.

<sup>142</sup> *Ibid.*, ff. 45<sup>r</sup>.15-30, 45<sup>v</sup>.1-8. One aspect that one would think would have been of great concern to gardeners, especially in the vegetable garden, and yet makes hardly any appearance, is that of dealing with pests and diseases. As mentioned above, such concern does arise when caring for trees and vines, but it does not seem to appear anywhere else. It is unclear why it did not feature more prominently in household

Finally, despite knowing that the renewed interest in gardening that existed among members of the upper classes stemmed largely from the need to cultivate their own land and produce their own food, one cannot help but be slightly disappointed at the lack of entries on floriculture in household books. Anthony Lewes, author of Sloane, mentioned marigolds in his monthly planting calendar, but they are included here as edible ‘herbs’ rather than flowers.<sup>143</sup> The author of Ferguson included many entries on preserving flowers once picked, and on creating wax and silk replicas of flowers, but nowhere is there mention of actually growing the living models.<sup>144</sup> The author of Lansdowne 9 is the only one to have made a reference to growing flowers, with this entry on roses:

‘Delve<sup>o</sup> well your rose settes about the roote nere twoe / spannes  
bredthe in the springe season, and laie freshe / moule<sup>o</sup> of very good  
earth and some pigeon dounge<sup>o</sup> / about them, and water the same  
with hote liquid and / they will shoote forthe, and beare Roses very  
soone’.<sup>145</sup>

Nevertheless, even this lack of entries on floriculture can offer valuable insight into gardening in the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries, as shall be discussed in chapter five.

---

books, as it seems unlikely that these particular individuals were never faced with such problems.

<sup>143</sup> Sloane, f. 24<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>144</sup> Ferguson, 189-190, 196, 207-208, 231-271.

<sup>145</sup> Lansdowne 9, f. 45<sup>v</sup>.11-15.

## Chapter 4 – The sources

The final point that needs to be addressed, concerns where the owners of household books might have obtained their gardening advice. Writing in the late sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries, belonging to the upper classes of society, and being quite well educated, the majority of these individuals would have had access to quite a number of different sources. These could have included Classical Latin texts and contemporary gardening manuals, as well as written or perhaps even oral communication with other fellow gardeners. Unfortunately, the authors of household books did not always explicitly identify their sources in their notes, meaning that much is left to speculation.<sup>146</sup>

Given that Classical works on husbandry were seeing a revival at this time, it is probable that new gardeners among the upper classes, who sought validation from these texts for their involvement in gardening activities, also referred to them to acquire at least basic knowledge of the process of cultivation. Written in both prose and verse, Latin texts by authors such as Cato, Varro, Virgil, Pliny, Columella, and Palladius, offered general discussions on a variety of gardening activities.<sup>147</sup> One can find information on identifying different types of soils, planting vegetables, caring for fruit trees and vines, and properly laying out gardens. In terms of acquiring general knowledge then, these texts would have been a perfect place to start. Indeed two of the present household books do offer clear indications that their owners consulted and sought guidance from Latin texts.

First, William Briton, author of Add 6, entitled his main gardening entry ‘rules of husbandry taken out of Vergil and auctors well approved’. While he does not give any further specifications, he is undoubtedly referring to Virgil’s *Georgics*, to which a direct correlation can be found in some of his entries. To offer one example, the agricultural tip that suggests ‘if the grownd / be light or sandy it shall suffice to eare° it with a shallow / furrowe° under the signe Arcturus which is abowt the dogge / days there leste weedes overcome the cherefull corne / here leste the smale (small) sappe &

---

<sup>146</sup> I have attempted to identify the exact sources for as many entries as possible, but due to the time and space constraints of this dissertation, I could not identify them all.

<sup>147</sup> These became more technically precise over time, with Columella’s work being seen as the ‘most comprehensive and systematic of all treatises of Roman writers on agricultural affairs’. Thirsk, ‘Making a Fresh Start’, 21-22.

frutfull moysture foresake / the barren land'<sup>148</sup> is a very close translation of the following lines from the first book of the *Georgics*: 'at si non fuerit tellus fecunda, sub ipsum / Arcturum tenui sat erit suspendere sulco: / illic, officiant laetis ne frugibus herbae, / hic, sterilem exiguus ne deserat umor harenam'.<sup>149</sup> Many other similar occurrences can be seen, with entries taken from both the first and second books of Virgil's work.<sup>150</sup>

As for the other 'auctors well approved', whether or not they were also Classical authors is uncertain. The suggestions, for example, about bean sowing could possibly relate back to Pliny's *Natural History*, which includes several references to beans, but they do not seem to match any specific lines perfectly. The appearance of the name 'Mr Platt' (a late-sixteenth century author, to be discussed further below) in his notes, however, suggests that these 'auctors' were perhaps also contemporary authors whom he felt did not need identification.

Secondly, the author of Add 2, William Lambard, actually quoted passages in Latin from all of the authors listed above (except Pliny), and included the relevant author's name as the title or as a marginal note for that particular entry. He indicated the specific book from Virgil's *Georgics* from which his quotes were taken (these seem to be limited to books one and two),<sup>151</sup> and occasionally provided what could be a page number for the entries taken from the other four authors (e.g. Columella 486).<sup>152</sup> It seems fairly certain that the author had access to a full edition of Virgil's

---

<sup>148</sup> Add 6, f. 55<sup>r</sup>.38-44.

<sup>149</sup> Virgil, *Georgics*, I.67-70. (The only remarks that can be made are that he includes a gloss of 'Arcturus', and that he translates 'exiguus humor' twice.)

<sup>150</sup> The passage quoted on page 25 of this dissertation regarding shaping the earth into a ball to test its fertility and the conclusion of the passage quoted on pages 28-29 which emphasises the importance of sowing after the setting of the star *maia* (one of the Pleiades), are also both clear references to *Georgics* II.248-253 and I.225-226 respectively. Briton did actually mention Virgil's name again on f. 62<sup>r</sup>.1. Rather than directly translating the quote from Virgil, however, in this instance he summarised Virgil's advice on using *amurca* to help improve the growth of pulse<sup>o</sup>. It is also possible that Briton consulted an English translation of Virgil, such as Fleming's 1589 edition *The Bucoliks of Publius Virgilius Maro together with his Georgiks*, London, but unable to consult all the late-sixteenth century English editions, I have not found any exact textual matches that would confirm this suggestion.

<sup>151</sup> See Add 2, ff. 2<sup>v</sup>.9-22, 3<sup>v</sup>, 9<sup>r</sup>.21-27, 11<sup>v</sup>.

<sup>152</sup> *Ibid.*, f. 37<sup>r</sup>. He never mentioned the titles of their works, but it is possible that he read the collected work *Scriptores rei rusticae*, which was very popular and easily accessible at the time. The work had numerous editions throughout the sixteenth century: Manutius, Venice, 1514; Badius, Paris, 1529; Gryphius, Lyon, 1535, 1541



work, and had it in hand when he was compiling his household book, as the quotes generally appear quite close to the original text.<sup>153</sup> For example, the entry ‘urit enim lini campum seges, urit avenae, / urunt Lethaeo perfusa papavera somno’,<sup>154</sup> is identical to lines 77-78 of *Georgics*, I.

Regarding the other Latin authors, slight discrepancies often appear between Lambard’s quotes and critical editions, making it harder to determine whether or not he was copying passages directly from the texts. In many cases the main difference seems to be only that he noted down a summarised version of an original passage rather than the whole quote. This does indeed seem to be case with his entry on folio 37<sup>r</sup>.10-12, which he attributes to Columella. The entry reads ‘surculum ab una parte eradito tum alte quam / cuneum dimisisti, sed ita, ne medullam, aut / alterius partis corticem Loedas’,<sup>155</sup> whereas Columella’s *De re rustica*, in both the collected edition of the *Scriptores rei rusticae* and its own individual edition, offers ‘postea surculos, quos inserere voles, falce acuta ex ima/una parte deradito tantum, quantum cuneus demissus spatii dabit, atque ita, ne medullam/s, neve alterius partis corticem laedas’.<sup>156</sup> In other cases, he seems to have reorganised words or chosen to make plural subjects singular, as occurs in his quotes from Varro and Palladius respectively on storing hay and grain (f. 12<sup>v</sup>.21-28).<sup>157</sup> These discrepancies do not automatically

---

and 1548; Estienne, Paris, 1543, among others. Each author received at least one individual sixteenth century printing as well, but these were much less common: Cato: Plantin, Lyon, 1590 and 1598; Varro: Estienne, Paris, 1569, 1573, and 1585; Columella: Estienne, Paris, 1543; Palladius: Tiletanus, Paris, 1536. See Gesner’s ‘Index editionum’ in his 1735 edition of the *Scriptores rei rusticae* for a full list of editions: Leipzig, XLIII-L.

<sup>153</sup> An exception occurs on f. 3<sup>v</sup>, where an entire line (196) is missing from the quote of lines 193-200 of *Georgics*, I. This could have been intentional or perhaps simply a scribal error. Interestingly, this is the very passage to which the author of Add 6 made reference in his note on steeping pulse<sup>o</sup> in *amurca* (see above p.39, n.150).

<sup>154</sup> Add 2, f. 6<sup>v</sup>.14-15. ‘For a flax crop burns the field, wild oats burn it, and poppies burn it, drenched in Lethean sleep.’

<sup>155</sup> Ibid., 37<sup>r</sup>.10-12. ‘Shave the scion on one side as large as the wedge you inserted, but so that you do not damage the pith or the bark on the other side.’

<sup>156</sup> Columella, *De re rustica*, V.11, in Gesner (ed.), *Scriptores rei rusticae*, 562; and in *On Agriculture, Volume II: Books 5-9*, trans. and ed. E. Forster and E. Heffner, Loeb Classical Library, Cambridge 1954, 102-104. ‘Afterwards with a sharp pruning-knife cut the scions which you wish to insert, on the bottom/on one side, as large as the space left by the wedge that was thrust in, in such a way that you do not damage the pith or the bark on the other side.’

<sup>157</sup> These are evidently echoes of Varro’s *Rerum rusticarum libri III*, I: 56, and Palladius’s *Opus agriculturae*, I: 32, but with minor changes. These will not be

imply that he did not have access to full editions of the text, but they could be indications that he was citing from memory, or perhaps even from a *florilegium* of excerpts, where small changes could have developed.

Three other household books also include information that can be found in Classical texts, without, however, ever actually alluding to their sources. It is especially difficult in these cases to identify the exact text to which the owner of the household book was referring, as Latin authors often borrowed statements from their predecessors or contemporaries. Lansdowne 9, does mention the name of a Classical author saying that ‘Columella writeth that the artchoke taketh most / delight with Ashes, which will preserve him from wormes wherunto he ys most subiecte’,<sup>158</sup> but one cannot be sure if the author of these notes did actually read the original Latin text, or if he had perhaps obtained this advice from a secondary source that also quoted the Classical author. Columella does indeed suggest that ashes are the best fertiliser for artichokes, (‘multo cinere stercorabimus. Id enim genus stercoris huic holeri videtur aptissimum’)<sup>159</sup> but he does not seem to discuss its benefits against worms specifically. This would perhaps imply that the author of this household book assembled these facts from sources other than the original.

The long but rather unspecific advice on the best soil for vines mentioned in Lansdowne 8, which states:

the grounde for your vines muste not be faste or lose (loosened) but rather / lose then faste nether to fatte nor leane but in amene (an equal level) and more / night (nigh to) fatt then leane nether to stepe (steep) nor to playne (flat) nether to / drye nor to moiste but sumwhat deweishe (dewy) neither salt / nor bitter<sup>160</sup>

appears in a similar manner in both Columella’s *De re rustica*, and Palladius’s *Opus agriculturae*.<sup>161</sup> Seeing as both Latin passages are very similar and the entry in the

discussed in more detail here, as their subject matter is not relevant to the current study.

<sup>158</sup> f. 45<sup>r</sup>.12-14.

<sup>159</sup> Columella, *De re rustica*, XI.3. ‘we shall fertilise [the artichoke] with much ash. For this type of fertiliser seems most suitable for this vegetable.’

<sup>160</sup> f. 36<sup>r</sup>.31-35.

<sup>161</sup> Columella, *De re rustica*, III.1. ‘optimum est solum nec densum nimis nec resolutum, soluto tamen propius; nec exile nec laetissimum, proximum tamen uberi; nec campestre, nec praeceps; simile tamen edito campo; nec siccum nec uliginosum; modice tamen roscidum’. Palladius, *Opus agriculturae*, II.13. ‘Sed solum vineis ponendis nec spissum nimis nec resolutum propius tamen resoluto: nec exile, nec

Lansdowne manuscript offers only the text in translation, one cannot be sure whether the advice was taken from one or the other or even both Latin authors. The instructions found in Egerton for making one's radishes grow very large (quoted above on pp. 35-36) are also very similar to instructions once offered by Pliny: 'quidam prodidere, si palo adacto caverna palea insternatur sex digitorum altitudine, deinde in semen fimumque et terra congeratur, ad magnitudinem scrobis crescere.'<sup>162</sup> The quote is not so exact, however, that one can definitely say the owner of Egerton was reading Pliny at the time when he composed this entry.

Overall, these quotes demonstrate how upper class gardeners referred to Classical texts for precise pieces of advice, and perhaps also received broader inspiration from them to undertake such practices as grafting and viticulture.<sup>163</sup> Nevertheless, not all the owners of household books felt inclined or perhaps had the opportunity to refer directly to Classical sources. It also seems that not a single one of those mentioned in this study (including the ones who included direct quotes) felt confident enough to rely on Classical texts alone. They each seem to have been influenced by at least one other type of source throughout their notes on gardening; the first of these being contemporary written documents. These would have comprised two main genres of texts, namely published gardening manuals and almanacs, both of which saw a surge in popularity starting in the late sixteenth century.<sup>164</sup>

---

laetissimum; tamen laeto proximum: nec campestre, nec praeceps, sed potius edito campo: nec siccum, nec uliginosum: modice tamen roscidum'. See also John Martyn's 1827 edition of Virgil's *Georgics*: 153 n.184.

<sup>162</sup> Pliny, *Naturalis historia*, XIX: 26. 'Some have said that if a hole six inches deep is made by driving in a stake and it is covered at the bottom with chaff, followed by a seed and manure, and then earth is heaped on it, [a radish] will grow to the size of the hole.' I consulted H. Rackham's edition of the text for help with this translation. *Pliny, Natural History, Volume IV*, London 1965.

<sup>163</sup> The Romans were fascinated by the possibilities of grafting, and viticulture was evidently an important part of their culture. Huxley, *Illustrated History*, 214. The keen interest in both practices that developed in France and England during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries likely stemmed from close interaction with Classical texts. Half of the household books under consideration here make mention of vines, even though the climate of England and most of France is not best suited for their growth. Quest-Ritson suggests that many Englishmen argued that their country's geography and latitude made it suitable for viticulture so that they could justify partaking in the practice. *The English Garden*, 70.

<sup>164</sup> Most unusually, the author of Lansdowne 9 also referred to the Bible. The remedy offered for curing the barrenness of a tree (f. 45<sup>v</sup>.26-28.) is taken (explicitly so) from

With regards to gardening manuals, some of the most successful were: Thomas Hill's *A most briefe and pleasaunte treatyse, teachynge how to dresse, sowe, and set a garden* (1563, which subsequently appeared as *The Profitable Arte of Gardening*) and *The Gardener's Labyrinth* (1577), Pietro de' Crescenzi's *Ruralia commoda*,<sup>165</sup> Charles Estienne's *L'Agriculture et maison rustique* (1564, translated into English in 1600),<sup>166</sup> Thomas Tusser's *Five hundred Points of Good Husbandry* (1573, an expanded edition of his original *A Hundred Points of Good Husbandry* from 1557), Hugh Platt's *The Jewell House of Art and Nature* (1594) and *Floraes Paradise* (1608), Olivier de Serres's *Théâtre d'agriculture et mesnage des champs* (1600), William Lawson's *A New Orchard and Garden and The Country Housewife's Garden* (1618), and Gervase Markham's *A Way to Get Wealth* (1623). Besides making information from Classical texts more easily available to those who perhaps did not have a sufficient level of education to read the original Latin,<sup>167</sup> they also offered advice that was more modern and perhaps more relevant to the geographical location of the audience. Exactly who the intended audience of these manuals was is still a point of contention among historians, but it seems as though the public may have been wider than previously believed. Simpler methods of presenting information, cheaper materials used to create the books, and claims by several authors that their works were written in a simple style, all suggest that these manuals were intended to be read by members of the lower classes who were perhaps less educated, and could not afford expensive printed publications.<sup>168</sup> Still, it seems as though members of the upper classes might also have read these texts.

---

St. Luke's parable of the barren fig tree (Luke 13.6-9). This appears to be the only example of the Bible used as a source for gardening instructions in these household books. The author of Add 6 does include a proverb attributed to Solomon (ff. 58<sup>r</sup>.2-4, 104<sup>v</sup>.54-56 that is found in the Old Testament (Ecclesiastes 11.4), but he always refers to this line as a 'proverb' or a 'saying' and never suggests that he obtained it from a religious text.

<sup>165</sup> This text was actually written in the fourteenth century (completed some time between 1304 and 1309), but it gained popularity during the sixteenth century in England and France thanks to the numerous translations made following its first printed edition of 1471.

<sup>166</sup> This was largely a reworking of his 1554 *Praedium rusticum*. French gardening manuals actually became very popular in England, especially those on growing fruit trees. Quest-Ritson, *The English Garden*, 71.

<sup>167</sup> Many of these contemporary gardening manuals were based on Classical texts.

<sup>168</sup> Samson, 'Introduction', 3; McRae, 'Husbandry Manuals', 44, 45, 47.

Indeed, even the authors of Add 6 and Add 2, who could and did read original Latin texts, sought advice from these manuals. William Briton carefully read and analysed Sir Hugh Platt's work on soils,<sup>169</sup> making sure to record the author's 'opyneon together with [his] owne coniecture'.<sup>170</sup> William Lambard, heavily referenced an earlier French text entitled *Du gagnage des terres*,<sup>171</sup> and also included quotes in Latin from Charles Estienne, Pietro de' Crescenzi, as well as Conrad Heresbach (these would have been excerpts from his *Rei rusticae libri quatuor*, 1570). Another well educated and high-ranking individual, Claude de Bellièvre (accredited with the majority of entries in Français) also relied heavily on a contemporary gardening manual, namely Gorgole de Corne's *Traicté de la manière d'enter, planter & nourrir arbres selon nostre climat* (1533), of which he copied a large portion word for word in his household book.

Unfortunately, none of the other household books include explicit references to gardening manuals but, just as with Classical texts, it is still possible that the owners read and were influenced by the popular trends established by contemporary sources. Other than the first section of Anthony Lewes's entry on knowing 'the vertue of hearbs<sup>o</sup> att all seasons',<sup>172</sup> which is nearly identical to a passage from Thomas Hill's *A Most Briefe and Pleasant Treatyse*,<sup>173</sup> specific instructions or gardening methods offered in the manuals do not seem to have been copied exactly by the authors of household books. General themes, goals, and suggestions, however, tend to be very similar in both sets of documents. Most manuals do, for example, offer instructions for growing 'great' vegetables,<sup>174</sup> encourage the use of pigeon's dung and

---

<sup>169</sup> This would have been Book 2 of *The Jewell House of Art and Nature*, which discusses 'sundrie newe sortes of soyle or Marle for the better manuring of pasture or arable groundes, with divers conceits of Husbandry not heretofore published.'

<sup>170</sup> Add 6, f. 60<sup>r</sup>.1-2.

<sup>171</sup> Believed to have been written in the fourteenth century this text is not strictly contemporary but will still be included here as it is a similar type of manual. The manuscript of this text has been identified as Cambridge, Corpus Christi College, MS 301, pp. 141-152: <http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>. See the *Catalogue des manuscrits français de la bibliothèque Parker*, p.87 for a comment on the dating of the text.

<sup>172</sup> Sloane, f. 1<sup>v</sup>.7-8.

<sup>173</sup> See V. and H. Trovillion's edition of the text: Herrin 1946, 84. Only the dates seem to have been changed to the names of the feast days. The second half of Lewes's entry does not seem to exist in Hill's text, and I was unable to identify its origin.

<sup>174</sup> Hugh Platt, *Floraes Paradise*, London 1608, 19, 24. Thomas Hill, *A Most Briefe and Pleasaunte Treatyse*, 42; Olivier de Serres, *Théâtre d'agriculture et mesnage des champs* [1600], Paris 1805, 229.

fertilisers in general,<sup>175</sup> support the belief in lunar gardening,<sup>176</sup> include occasional receipts belonging to the realm of natural magic,<sup>177</sup> and repeatedly insist on knowing the proper timing for sowing, planting, and harvesting.<sup>178</sup> Thus, the information found in these gardening manuals could also have provided a general knowledge base upon which gentlemen could then add their own personal experience.

A similar situation can be seen with almanacs. Despite not being considered great works of literature, these calendars were widely read in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries in both England and France.<sup>179</sup> They became highly influential texts as they permitted the dissemination of new scientific ideas, and promoted good health and overall well-being.<sup>180</sup> They were, however, also somewhat controversial due to their astrological nature and claims of being able to predict the future, and were frequently accused of dealing with witchcraft.<sup>181</sup> Nevertheless, it is their astrological nature that probably would have resonated most with the authors of household books. Almanacs did not always have extensive entries on practical methods for gardening,<sup>182</sup> these generally being limited to monthly images that depicted the work that should be done, or brief suggestions such as: ‘[Avril] dernier quartier sera le XIX iour à 2 heures apres midy 14 minutttes de Leo lequel amenera un temps venteux &

---

<sup>175</sup> Platt, *Floraes Paradise*, 17, 19; Charles Estienne, *L’Agriculture et maison rustique* [1574], Paris 1572, 190<sup>v</sup>, 191<sup>r</sup>; Gervase Markham, ‘Farewell to Husbandry’, in *A Way to Get Wealth*, London 1625, 7, 21-22, 39-41, 49, 71; William Lawson, ‘A New Orchard and Garden’, in *A Way to Get Wealth*, 3, 42; de Serres, *Théâtre*, 221, 233-234, 244, 259, and *passim*.

<sup>176</sup> Platt, *Floraes Paradise*, 62, 70, 72, 84, 106; Thomas Tusser, *Five Hundred Points of Good Husbandry* [1573], Oxford 1984, 50; Hill, *A Most Briefe and Pleasaunt Treatise*, 36, 77; Lawson, ‘New Orchard’, 19; de Serres, *Théâtre*, 225, 226, 227, 230-231, 244, 269, 334 and *passim*.

<sup>177</sup> Platt, *Floraes Paradise*, 55; Hill, *A Most Briefe and Pleasaunt Treatise*, 66; de Serres, *Théâtre*, 332

<sup>178</sup> Platt, *Floraes Paradise*, 62, 73, 97, 109, 132; Tusser, *Five Hundred Points*, *passim*; Markham, ‘Farewell to Husbandry’, 8, 154-160; Lawson, ‘New Orchard’, 28. Hill, *A Most Briefe and Pleasaunt Treatise*, 28; Estienne, *Maison rustique*, 58<sup>v</sup>, 62<sup>r</sup>, 62<sup>r</sup>, 65<sup>v</sup>, 67<sup>r</sup>; de Serres, *Théâtre*, *passim* 215-433.

<sup>179</sup> B. Capp, *Astrology and the Popular Press*, London 1979, 19, 23, 24. R. Mandrou, *De la culture populaire aux XVII<sup>e</sup> et XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècles*, Paris 1964, 36.

<sup>180</sup> B. Capp, ‘The Status and Role of Astrology in 17<sup>th</sup> Century England’, in *Scienze, credenze occulte, livelli di cultura*, Florence 1982, pp. 279-290 (282); Capp, *Astrology and the Popular Press*, 117.

<sup>181</sup> Capp, *Astrology and the Popular Press*, 31, 128.

<sup>182</sup> Indeed, their contents were often linked more closely to astrological medicine, which was also very popular at the time. M. Best, ‘Introduction’, in *The English Housewife*, ed. M. Best, Kingston 1986, xxxiii.

muable (changeant) avec pluye, durant icelle (celle-ci) il faict bon pour planter toutes sortes d'arbres fructiers'.<sup>183</sup> Therefore, there was not always much in terms of gardening advice that could have been copied into a household book, and so, no explicit references to almanacs can be seen. It is highly likely, however, that they would have been a further source of justification for the belief in lunar and astrological gardening, on which gardeners clearly still heavily relied.

Finally, one of the most important sources from which authors of household books would have derived much of their advice on gardening is personal experience. For some, the personal experience of friends and acquaintances was sufficient, so long as they had a trustworthy source that could ensure that a specific set of instructions would lead to the desired outcome. This is something that was especially common for medical and culinary recipes, which the owners of household books frequently attributed to a specific individual. A 'medicine for oxe' and a cure for diseases in horses in Add 2 were supposedly tested by a certain Phillip Jewel, and an O. Wood respectively,<sup>184</sup> Doctor Barrowe, Captayne Creswell and Lord Darcy, among others, were all associated with various medical recipes in Egerton,<sup>185</sup> a recipe for hog's cheek in Sloane was borrowed from a certain Goody Cleazies and a recipe for 'a lumber pudding pye' in the same book was noted as 'my mother's way'.<sup>186</sup> It did also occur with gardening advice, as the author of Add 2 attributed his entry 'for fruite trees & pygeons' to someone named Parson Brock,<sup>187</sup> and William Briton included 'a note to prove that salt be a fatter of the land' which 'hathe benne proved

---

<sup>183</sup> Florent de Crox, *Almanach pour l'an de bissexe 1596*, Paris, 1595, [23]. '[April] the last quarter will be on the XIX day at 2 o'clock in the afternoon 14 minutes from Leo, at which time it will be suitable to plant all kinds of fruit trees.'

<sup>184</sup> Add 2, ff. 23<sup>r</sup>, 30<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>185</sup> Egerton, ff. 65<sup>r</sup>, 71<sup>r</sup>, 78<sup>r</sup>.

<sup>186</sup> Sloane, ff. 5<sup>v</sup>, 3<sup>v</sup>. The Sloane manuscript in general is a curious case of relying on an acquaintance's knowledge, as the whole book of medicine (if not the entire household book) was copied from a certain Lady Marques Dorsett's book. Furthermore, this raises once again the question of division of labour in the household. The author of Egerton also indicated some medical recipes as coming from 'Abbes of Denny hyr booke' (f. 10<sup>r</sup>). It would seem that these entries had originally been compiled by women, which suggests that they were subject to a woman's care, and yet, here they are copied by men. Men too, then, must have been involved to some extent in these activities to justify copying them down in the first place.

<sup>187</sup> Add 2, f. 43<sup>r</sup>.

by experyenc by one dwelling at Clapham'<sup>188</sup> and related the entire story of the success a husbandman in Devonshire had with fertilising his land, as told to him by a man from Corston.<sup>189</sup>

Often, however, owners of household books could only truly be assured of the success of gardening methods by testing these themselves. Gentlemen were very keen to experiment and, as has already been discussed, it was in their gardens that many new horticultural techniques developed. The tips and advice they noted down thus very likely often stemmed from results they had achieved through trial and error. Evidence of this personal experience is perhaps most visible in Add 6, in which Briton wrote: 'it is requisite to heare / [Mr Platt's] reasons hereon & then to come to the true knowledge therof by practice / & experience'.<sup>190</sup> He did indeed follow his own advice, applying it to all authors, not only Mr Platt. He returned to entries that he had originally taken from Classical or contemporary sources and noted down the outcome of the advice which he had clearly personally tested.<sup>191</sup> This often appears simply as 'proved in ano 1596 et semper',<sup>192</sup> 'as it hapned in part of the ij acres by my pece 1597',<sup>193</sup> or 'it came to profitt good tillage<sup>o</sup> with aowt twifalow<sup>o</sup> in ano 1594',<sup>194</sup> but he also occasionally included more detailed thoughts, for example on the matter of wheat sowing about which he said:

'but I cann synce by my owne experyenc showe / [...] the wheat, (but especially the graybald)<sup>195</sup> provethe best / best when the mowld<sup>o</sup> lyethe heaviest on it, as experyence teacheth. as for / example the hevyest clay land, bredethe the waighiest (heaviest) toppe if the land (what kind of mowld<sup>o</sup> soever it be) be dry or light at sowing, the corne proveth light / the hevier the land is (so it be not so wett to bury) the waightier will the topp be'.<sup>196</sup>

---

<sup>188</sup> Add 6, f. 56<sup>v</sup>.7, marginal note 2.

<sup>189</sup> Ibid., f. 60<sup>r</sup>.3-21.

<sup>190</sup> Ibid., f. 56<sup>v</sup>.33-35.

<sup>191</sup> Indication that these notes were added later is given by the fact that the ink is a different colour. He also entitled his second main entry dealing with gardening advice 'rules of husbandry partly practysed by myself, partly taken out of other authores in anno 1596', f. 104<sup>r</sup>.1-2.

<sup>192</sup> Add 6, f. 59<sup>v</sup>, marginal note 1.

<sup>193</sup> Ibid., f. 60<sup>v</sup>.58-59.

<sup>194</sup> Ibid., f. 105<sup>v</sup>, marginal note 2.

<sup>195</sup> This does not appear to be a variety of wheat still grown today.

<sup>196</sup> Add 6, ff. 59<sup>r</sup>.64-59<sup>v</sup>.5.



Similar notes appear in Lansdowne 8 and 9, in which the authors mention ‘after your grounde is prepared let your vines be sett / therin before it be settled for this is by continuall experience / tried to be good for the vyne’,<sup>197</sup> and ‘if the springe be drye, to cast either freshe, or salte / water, with squirtes of brasse, or wood, made for the nones (purpose), / upon your younge trees, and to keape them alwaies moyste, / hath bene tryed very good against the Caterpillers.’<sup>198</sup> As for the other household books, personal experience is not necessarily explicitly stated, but the very nature of their entries could lead one to believe that much of the advice was gained in such a manner. The fact that most entries are made up of short sentences (e.g. ‘febves demandent terre moueste (moite)’,<sup>199</sup> or ‘for to have mulberyes hastely & tyll / alhollautyde / Graffe them on a warden<sup>o</sup> tree, & on a thethorne<sup>o</sup> tree, / to have them hastely, & in a medler<sup>o</sup> tree to have them late),<sup>200</sup> include a variety of different spellings for the same word on the same page (f. 33<sup>v</sup> of Français offers three spellings for lettuce: laituez, lectuez, and laictuez, and two for cabbage: cholz and choulx, and in Sloane (f. 24<sup>f</sup>) one can see lettis and lettys, radish and radyshe, and longedebeif<sup>o</sup> and langdebeif<sup>o</sup>), and change from topic to topic in a seemingly arbitrary fashion, indicates that they were probably not directly copied from a written source, but stemmed from personal thought. This would indeed make sense as practical advice is, after all, usually the outcome of practical experience.

Altogether, then, these sources allowed owners of household books to gather advice and tips on gardening that were proven to be effective either by an accepted authoritative text or by personal experience. No matter where the tips came from they offered practical aid to the owner of the household book, helping them improve the quality of their produce and become more successful gardeners.

---

<sup>197</sup> Lansdowne 8, f. 36<sup>v</sup>.38-40.

<sup>198</sup> Lansdowne 9, f. 47<sup>v</sup>.10-13.

<sup>199</sup> LDR La Landelle, 14.15. ‘Broad beans require a moist soil.’

<sup>200</sup> Harley, f. 65<sup>r</sup>.6-9.

## Chapter 5 – Conclusions

Although many members of the upper classes perhaps became involved in gardening activities out of necessity due to difficult economic circumstances, it is clear that they rapidly developed an interest in such activities as well. The great variety of topics and the amount of detail that many of these authors included in their household books, covering techniques for growing all manner of vegetables, fruit trees, vines, and grains, demonstrates the extent to which they truly desired to increase their knowledge of gardening. Indeed, they seemed to be especially keen to learn the science behind the practice, as they noted, for example, the effects of fertilising, rotating crops, and grafting at specific times of year. They clearly understood that different plants required different environments in order to thrive, and were aware of the difficulties involved in creating these ideal environments. As gardening was not yet a fully established science, and was an activity in which many gentlemen had very little or no prior knowledge, they occasionally sought advice from authoritative texts on the subject, and continued to learn through their own practical experiments. Most of these authors were, after all, quite well educated, and likely wanted to maintain a certain amount of learning in their approach to gardening as this is one major factor that would have separated them from gardeners of the lower social classes and would have made gardening an activity worthy of their social status. The notes they compiled were then sometimes shared by multiple family members and eventually passed down through generations, being modified, added to, and improved as new personal discoveries were made.

At the same time as new methods and techniques were developing in the practice of domestic gardening, it is possible to see that traditional beliefs of astrological and lunar gardening still had a hold on much of the population, including members of the upper classes. These were ideas that had been around for centuries and were supported by Classical and contemporary authors alike. Therefore, although gentlemen seemingly understood the importance of factors like the amount of moisture and nutriment in the soil for a plant's growth, they also believed that the phase of the moon and the position of the stars could impact their development. The authors of these household books were also not immune to popular trends that developed in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries such as that of attempting to modify one's produce through processes of natural magic. They seemed to think that

they truly would be able to grow fruits without stones thanks to a simple bit of grafting, or change a vegetable's taste altogether by lying its seeds among rose petals before planting them. Thankfully, however, by this time gardeners seemed to have abandoned some of the more superstitious rituals set forth by the ancients, such as that of having a menstruating girl walk around the vegetable plot bare-chested three times in order to get rid of unwanted pests.<sup>201</sup>

On the whole, then, perhaps the most significant piece of insight on sixteenth and seventeenth century garden history that these household books can offer is that not all gardens during this period were created for pleasure and beauty; private gardens of members of the upper classes truly were meant to be functional. This claim is perhaps best indicated by the fact that there is hardly any mention of floriculture in household books and no mention whatsoever of garden design and layout. For these individuals, gardening was much more than creating complex knot designs or symmetrical parterres of brightly coloured flowers. It was about knowing how deep to plough their land to ensure a successful crop of barley, knowing on which tree to graft their medlars in order to make them sweet, and knowing when was the best time of year to plant their artichokes, lettuces, cabbages, and onions so that they would grow to a great size. One could argue that the lack of entries concerning floriculture was simply due to the fact that these individuals already possessed abundant knowledge on the subject and so did not feel the need to note down any tips. The combination, however, of the suggestion that most members of the upper classes had never tended to their own land before and that 'there is always room for improvement in the garden' makes it hard to believe that they would have consciously chosen not to include any tips on improving the growth of their flowers, if they did indeed have such a garden. One might also be tempted to argue that flower gardens were part of the woman's domain and since the majority of these household books clearly belonged to men, they would not have felt the need to take notes on this subject. Household books, however, often included medical and culinary recipes as well, both of which were also thought to belong to the woman's sphere of activity. If male authors were willing to include entries of the sort, they likely would not have been hesitant to include advice on floriculture as well. In all likelihood, gentlemen were

---

<sup>201</sup> Columella, *De re rustica*, XI.3.

simply not interested in tending to flower gardens because these did not fulfill a practical need.

Unfortunately indicating exactly how gentlemen felt about their gardens is one area that is wanting in household books. These texts, by nature, generally lack emotion, as their purpose was simply to provide a space where facts could be noted down at will and according to need. Even though the authors sometimes indicated particular methods that had proved successful in their fields and gardens, one cannot really tell if they ever managed to produce great radishes, if the vines they fertilised with pigeon's dung produced better grapes, or if the onions they were supposed to harvest in May were ripe and ready. One can only guess at the overall productivity and outcome of their labours. Furthermore, Add 6 is the only household book that offers the reader a slight glimpse into what the owner's garden might have looked like, thanks to William Briton's lists of trees that grew and were grafted in the orchard at Kelston.<sup>202</sup> Other than that, these household books offer no sense of how big their owners' gardens were nor how many plants they actually grew. If one could identify exactly where these individuals lived, it would be fascinating to undertake an archaeological survey of their land to find clues as to the true nature of their gardens and how these correlate to the advice that was included in their household books. It would also be very interesting to find a letter by one of these authors, written to a fellow gardener or friend, that might show the frustrations, joys or moments of pride they felt in respect to their gardens.

In a future study, it would also be worthwhile to assess a broader range of household books containing gardening advice, specifically including some written by women, to see how their entries might compare to those written by men, and to obtain further insight on the division of responsibilities within the household. These might also provide further evidence as to who was actually involved in the process of gardening. This was a time when gentlemen were being encouraged by the royal household to manage, and live off, their own land. The documents under consideration here do seem to make it quite clear that gentlemen did do the work themselves, but it is not always clear whether they did this work alone or had help.

---

<sup>202</sup> He also names different pieces of his land throughout his notes such as the 'shepe howse pece' (f. 58<sup>r</sup>), the 'gore pece' (ff. 58<sup>r</sup>, 106<sup>r</sup>, 107<sup>v</sup>, 109<sup>r</sup>), the 'pece by my home mead' (ff. 61<sup>v</sup>, 108<sup>r</sup>), the 'longhill pece' (f. 62<sup>r</sup>), and the 'peece above the woods' (f. 105<sup>r</sup>), which help one gather a better understanding of Briton's land.

Given that many of the authors and owners of these household books included advice on agriculture it is very probable that they had some assistance, as sowing a field of grain would have been a big job for any one person at the time, let alone someone with very little or no experience in the process. This assistance could perhaps have come from hired help such as so-called ‘servants-in-husbandry’, but given the economic climate of the period, it is also possible that much of this help came from children, and other family members.<sup>203</sup> Again, without any further written proof, it is impossible to determine whether women of the upper classes would also have been involved in the practice.

Undertaking a study of a similar nature at even lower levels of society would also be highly rewarding and would truly expand the field of gardening history, which often tends to focus only on the gardens of the wealthiest members of society. Unfortunately, as with most other aspects of history, this would be a very difficult project to complete due to the lack of first-hand written accounts. Many of the household books analysed here offer such a wealth of information, precisely because their authors were so well educated and had the ability and the time to read written sources concerning gardening, copy relevant quotes, and also put their own thoughts down on paper. It is unlikely that people who lived off the land at lower levels of society would have been able to read and write so well. One can only assume that members of the lower classes also grew gardens for practical, rather than aesthetic purposes. Finding indications of what they grew and how they grew it, and comparing this in turn with what has been found in the present household books, would be very interesting indeed.

Word Count: 19 327

---

<sup>203</sup> There is no doubt that ‘servants-in-husbandry’ did at one time do the gardening for members of the gentry who simply oversaw their work (Bushnell, *Green Desire*, 18), and Lansdowne 8 does refer to ‘the worke man’ (f. 36<sup>v</sup>.24-25), but it likely would have been too expensive in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to rely on hired labour force alone.

Appendix  
Transcriptions of the gardening entries found in the French and English household books  
used in this dissertation

This appendix has been included to enable the reader to get a better sense of the context and range of gardening advice found in each household book. The transcriptions are not critical editions of the texts, but are my own diplomatic transcriptions. Besides expanding abbreviations, I have left everything as it appears in the manuscripts, including line breaks and inconsistencies in spelling. Furthermore, page formatting varies slightly throughout the appendix in order to better reflect the nature of the manuscripts. Terms followed by ° can be found in the glossaries following the appendix.

Legend:

- ( ) = modern equivalent (offered the first time the word appears in each manuscript)  
 [...?] = reading unclear  
 [---] = original cancellation  
 ] or [ = probable reading of damaged text

Egerton MS 2608

f. 10<sup>v</sup>

[...]

To make very greate radishes

Dig your ground 2 or 3 specten deepe so that the moulds may bee very soft & hollow  
 then take a walking stick as big as your finger put yt a foote downe into those soft moulds  
 20 then put a radish seede into that deepe hole, cover yt not above one intch & let the rest  
 of the hole bee hollow that hollownes will make the radish grow monstrous greate

To make greate artichokes

At Michaelmas when they have done bearing cut of (off) the leaves, & cover the roote all  
 over with  
 the emptying of a sheepes mawe (stomach), & ever as you see them spring above that  
 emptying cover  
 25 yt still with more untill the harde wether bee over: then let yt grow up taking away all the

f. 11<sup>r</sup>

succours or taunts leaving only the principall roote, & as the apples grow pull them of for  
 sallets leaving only 2 or 3 to growe.

f. 85<sup>v</sup>

Sett } respecting the seson when the mone (moon) is in } Taurus } between the } change  
 Sowe } } Virgo } } ffull  
 plante } } Capricornus } }  
 graffe } } pisces }

1

Remove any trees } in the firste quarter of the mone being in } Taurus } in } februarye  
 set yonge trees } } Capricornus } } Septembre }

Sowe seeds in gardens betwene the } Change } the moone being in } virgo  
 } full } Sagittaarius  
 } } pisces }

Sowe and sett } Sedes } as ye would have the [bruiage?] seedes } february to  
 } herbes } for store every newe moone from } June:

Set } soche (such) seds as shalbe (shall be) Rounde viz : } onions } and soche like 3 or 4 daies before the full mone  
 Sowe } } Cabage }  
 onions in } february } Turneppes  
 } marche }

5

Turneppes in maye

Cabage in { January  
february  
marche  
Septembre

Letfice everye moneth

10 Cut vynes the moone beinge in { Aries  
libra  
Scorpius } in { february  
marche  
Septembre  
october } in the begyninge

Cut downe trees for timber to build with towards the end of { Aquarius  
pisces }

Cut wood to brenne (burn) that the stock (trunk) maye soner growe againe in { Aries  
Libra }

15 Gelde or Libbe (castrate) beasts or Cattell from the [laste?] quarter unto { Aries  
Capricornus  
Sagittarius }

Sheare sheepe from the change to the full moone:

f. 86<sup>r</sup>

1 Donge<sup>o</sup> your lande whilst the moone decreseth: viz from the full to the change: for doing in contrarye [ye shall finde more increase of weedes to come thereby:



The beste and moste prosperous tyme to sowe alle kinde of [evrue?] is when the moone goeth downe in Cancer

Sowe greate beanes att the falle of the Leafe in strong Lande, And att the springe tyme the common small  
Beanes in weake & lighte Lande: bothe sorts att the full moone: by which practise ye shall finde your  
Beanes to be better Coddess<sup>o</sup>, then by the contrarye:

Sloane MS 556f. 1<sup>v</sup>

1

A Booke of Medicens Collected being most or all  
of them proved medicens to healp written by Mr  
Anthony Lewes the 20<sup>th</sup> of January 1606: out of a  
Booke which was the Lady Marques Dorsetts.

[...]

To knowe the vertue of hearbs<sup>o</sup>  
att all Seasons

10

From the Annunciation of our Lady till Midsomer  
the Leaves and flowers are in vertue.  
from Midsommer untill Michallmas the stalkes  
and hearbs<sup>o</sup> together are in vertue.  
ffrom St. Andrew untill the Annunciation of  
our Lady the roots are in vertue.

[...]

20

From the eight of the moneth of Aprill unto the  
moneth of July all manner of Leaves bee best.  
And from the eight of July unto the eight of October  
the stalkes have most vertue.  
And from the eight of october, unto the eight of Aprill  
all manner of rootes of herbes, bee in there full strength.

f. 24<sup>f</sup>

The tyme to sowe herbes not only for salletts (salads)  
but also for pottage (soup), sewes (stews) and other

February Parsely, spynage, lettys, Buglasse (Bugloss), Burrage (borage), Porres<sup>o</sup>,  
fennell  
Sorrell, cresses, Rocketts, marygoldes, & longedebeif<sup>o</sup>.

5

Marche Cowcombers, mellons, Gowardes (gourds), Savery, Cabbigges, carretts  
and Artychokes,  
Margerome

Aprill Margerome gentle, purslane, Basyll, and carrettes.

May Ramsons<sup>o</sup>, Cicory, and carretts.

Mydsomer Endyve, navis<sup>o</sup>, radish, rampiis<sup>o</sup>.

10

In þe end of August  
for winter Lettis, spynage, Buglasse, parsely, tyme, marygoldes,  
and let lettys be removed at Mychelmas.

In the end of October Let lettys be sowen and removed at candelmas, the which may  
succead the same lettys that were sowen in August.

- 15 Lettys, parsely, borage, langdebeif<sup>o</sup>, Mary goldes, thay be sowen  
in þe end of every monthe except, November, December, and January.
- A generall Rule All maner hearbes<sup>o</sup> sowen in the wayne of the moone be best  
except radyshe only which must have the full moone.
- 20 Tyme to remove hearbes<sup>o</sup> Lettys at Candlemas as is sayd before, Artychockes in ffebruary,  
Onyons in may. Endyve betwixt our Lady day & mychaelmas  
Let them be buryed, and of that hearbe<sup>o</sup> that is most ripe, take  
as you neede, and if you will have seedes of Endyve and Succory  
they must be sowen in ffebruary, or march, the other as þat sayd before.

## Harley MS 2389

f. 64<sup>r</sup>

for to graffe (graft) vine uppon vine

Cleave the vine as on (one) doth an other tree, & put on þe  
 5 graffe, on þe cleft<sup>o</sup>, & stoppe it well with waxe, & bind it  
 abowte etc.

If a tre be longe ere it beare fruite bore an hole in þe  
 tre, with a wimble<sup>o</sup>, þat þe hole towch (touch) the pyth of the tree, and  
 drive a pynne of drie tymber in the same hole, & stoppe  
 10 it with waxe, & the same tree, shall beare fruite, þat yere.

To have peches ripe ij monethes rather<sup>o</sup> then  
 other peches

Graffe them in a mulberye tree, or in a vine etc.

To have plummes (plums) of all maner all þe sommer season un-  
 15 tyll allhalloutide. Graffe þat one into þat other or on  
 þe thorne<sup>o</sup>, or in þe mulberye tree, or on a cherye tree etc.

Ffor to make medlers<sup>o</sup> or cheryes swete as spices, & þat  
 one may kepe them untyll newe. Graffe them in  
 a mulberye tree, as is aforesayd, & wett the graffe in  
 20 honye, & put in þe same hony powder of cloves, gynger &  
 canell (cinnamon), & etc. To make ap<sup>p</sup>les growe without blossoms  
 Graffe them on a fygge tree

To make cherries good for to eate at allholloutide

Graffe them in a mulberye tree or in a sage stocke.

25 Also graffe uppon a hollye tree a graffe of oke, & it  
 shalbe (shall be) grene all the yere etc.

f. 64<sup>v</sup>

For to have blanderell<sup>o</sup> & other lyke apples  
 hastelye & to endure to allhalloutyde, & for to  
 make them endure ij eyere.

Graffe them in Ricarden tree, warden<sup>o</sup> tree or  
 5 quince tree etc. To make medlers<sup>o</sup> lose theyr stones  
 & þat they be swete as honye

Graffe them in Eglerfir & wet þe graffe in honye.  
 I thynke þat where it was written Eglerfir in þe olde  
 booke, it showld be rather Eglantine.

10 To have gaylwayes (galloway) & other sommer peres  
 hastely, & late uppon þe trees

Graffe them in þe thenethorne<sup>o</sup>, & to have them late on  
 the warden<sup>o</sup> tree, or somme other hard tree etc.

for to make muscadell<sup>o</sup>

15 Take a wyer & put it in þe pyth of a vine, with iij knotts  
 when it is new cut, & with þe same wyer gather owt all þe  
 pyth, but yow must make a knott<sup>at</sup> the hender<sup>o</sup> end of þe  
 wyer as yow may drawe owt the pyth the bettre then  
 fyll it with powder of nuttmeggs and stoppe þe hole with

20 waxe, þat þe ayer may not entre therein, And all that  
 groweth on þe iij knotts shal[be]<sup>beare</sup> [must] muscadell<sup>o</sup> where-  
 soever þat it be set, planted or graffed etc.

for to have greate medlers<sup>o</sup>, ij monethes rather<sup>o</sup>  
 other, & on (one) of them to be better then twentye other

25 Graffe them in a thethorne<sup>o</sup> tree, or in a mulberye  
tree, & wett the graffe in honye etc.

f. 65<sup>r</sup>

1 for to have wardens<sup>o</sup>, & other wynter [~~pe~~pe] peres  
a moneth rather<sup>o</sup> then any other of theyr season  
& þat they dure unto new come

5 Good & harde graffe them in a mulberye tree or in a  
quince tree etc.

for to have mulberyes hastely & tyll  
alhollautyde

10 Graffe them on a warden<sup>o</sup> tree, & on a thethorne<sup>o</sup> tree,  
to have them hastely, & in a medler<sup>o</sup> tree to have them late

15 for to have halfe pere halfe apple  
Take ij graffes on (one) of pere tree & the other of an apple  
tree, & cleve them in sonder & in thone (the one) halfe of þe apple  
tree, to þe halfe of the pere tree, & bynde them well to-  
gether, þat þe water comme not there in þe clyfte<sup>o</sup>, then  
15 graffe them where ye wyll & the frute shalbe halfe  
pere, & halfe apple, & etc.

To kepe peres a yere

20 Put smale (small) drye salt in a barrell, & cowch (lie) þe peres ther-  
in, in beddyng wyse, þat is to say a bed of salt & a bed of  
peres, & so þat none of þe peres towch (touch) þe other, & stoppe well þe  
barrell, & kepe him in A drye place, þat þe salt relent  
not etc. & this shall kepe þe peres a yere.

25 It is good to graffe, iij or iiij dayes afore þe chaunge of þe mone  
And for to plant all maner plants, & set them in þe fyrst daye  
of þe chaunge, þe seconde or the thyrde, for thes be the  
best dayes therefore.

Lansdowne MS 101/8f. 36<sup>r</sup>

## Vynes

Those vynes that have many and thicke knottes be comonly better  
 then those that have fewe and thinne sett and for the most parte more fruitfull.  
 Yf you will not have your vines to shotte (shoot) out very tymely for feare  
 5 of sharpe wether to followe be not to hastye in cutting them for the  
 soner they will budde.

Vines muste be sett in a temperate ayer (air) rather hott than colde  
 rather drye then shadowie that is to say cloude and waterye.

10 The vyne feareth above all things tempest and wynde the north  
 winde maketh it fruitfull but the south winde causeth it to bring  
 forth noble wyne.

The playne felde (fields) and not watery valleis yelde more quantitie  
 of wyne, but the litle hilles and the valleis to them adioyning  
 being of one nature, give better wyne.

15 Plant your vines full of the South west or Este but not in the  
 north side.

The place often tymes chaungeth the nature of the grape and  
 therfore remowe your vines frome the worse to the better place as  
 smuche as you may.

20 Set the vines that can abyde mistes and frostes in the plane and  
 in the hilles such as can abide droweth<sup>o</sup> and windes.

In the fatt feilde sett the slender and tendre vines, and the fruitfull  
 in the leaner feildes.

25 In the colde and clowdy feilde set such vines as be rype before  
 winter or such as can best abide clowdes miste And the tender  
 vynes set in warme places on the dry grounde such as can not  
 beare the reayne, And to be breife: set vines in such places as be  
 contrary to those places wherin they were playnted before which  
 they could not away with in a mylde ayer you may easely set all  
 30 kyndes of vines.

The grounde for your vines muste not be faste or lose (loosened) but rather  
 lose then faste nether to fatte nor leane but in amene (an equal level) and more  
 night (nigh to) fatt then leane nether to stepe (steep) nor to playne (flat) nether to  
 35 drye nor to moiste but sumwhat deweishe (dewy) neither salt nor  
 bitter the which maketh the wine to savor yll

Placs (places) where unto yearth is drynen (draining) downe frome the  
 mountaynes or hills is good for vines and those also where the  
 river flowing hath left yearth.

40 A myxte clay is good for vines but clay alone is a greate enemy  
 to them blacke or redde sandy grounde is good myngled with  
 clay.

f. 36<sup>v</sup>

1 In the redd yearth vines take evil at the first but afterwarde  
 do prove well ynough. but this kynde of yearth is evil for  
 the laborours bycause with a litle moistre or sonne that is ether  
 to moiste or to moche dried up.

5 A grounde that is good for vines is knowen by this token yf it  
 be of a thinne coloure and substance if they playnte (sprout) branches  
 that it bringeth furth be smothe (smooth) taule (tall) and fruitfull.  
 Unhandled and wilde feildes are to be broken up for vines  
 and the rotes (roots) muste be diligently ploughed up that the vine may  
 10 be easely stene in it.

The grounde where you intende to sett your vines yf it be  
 drye muste be lauboured and digged in September or October  
 if it be moste (moist) in february or marche and that in the 1<sup>st</sup> sorts  
 the one is in ploughing your grounde with furrowes thother (the other)  
 15 is with making holes here and there in order as you will have  
 your vines stande, the thirde is in trenching your grounde  
 throughe out two fote depe to thentent (the intent) it may be purged  
 frome stubbes<sup>o</sup> rotes of tres and hurtfull herbes.

The holes where you sett your vines muste be one fote depe  
 20 in mostie (moist) grounde and two in dry grounde.

Yf your grounde be greate and have but <sup>fewe</sup> vines set them the  
 wider one frome an other that afterwarde with laying them  
 downe when they be growen you may fill the empty placs  
 Take heed that in trenching or digging your grounde the worke-  
 25 man put not in the bottom of the trench which muste be two  
 fote depe the rawe yerth and let him caste up all stones and  
 rotes of t[h]res especially plumtre<sup>o</sup> rotes for no evil thinge  
 should be hidde in the grounde where vines muste growe.

You may also set vines making holes with a stake or  
 30 boring the grounde with a greate augur made for the same  
 purpose which is best and lest labour yf your groundes be not  
 stonye

Let the grounde where your vineyarde shalbe firste <sup>ridd</sup> of all  
 tres and other baggage lest yf you do it after you have  
 35 trenched and prepared your grounde lest you tred [~~the~~] downe  
 the grounde and make it harde with the cariage of bagage  
 away.

After your grounde is prepared let your vines be sett  
 therin before it be settled for this is by continuall experience  
 40 tried to be good the vyne.

f. 37<sup>r</sup>

1 Your plantes (called maleolis) muste be gathered whan you will  
 sett them they may also be gathered before yf they be well kept.  
 The best tyme to gather your plantes is in october at franckforde  
 and in almeynge (Germany) the (they) use to gather them onely in marche which  
 5 is best the one is to be used in hote cuntres (countries) thother in colde cuntreys  
 Your plantes or rotes of vines muste not be chosen of fatter  
 grounde but out of like or leaner grounde.

Your plantes muste be gathered of the middle parte of the  
 vine nether to high nor to lowe.

10 They muste also be taken 5 ot 6 knotes frome the last yeres  
 growing for they do lightly degenerate and wax worse.

The plantes of vines be not to be taken of the toppes for they be  
 unfruitfull.

Take not a sett or a playnte growing of olde wodde.

15 Let your plantes be gathered of a very fruitfull vine, tokens  
of fruitfulness be these yf a plante of tholde (the old) woode beare fruite  
and if every braunche be full this can be tried onely at the vintage  
In one yeare you can not knowe the fruitfulness of a vyne but in  
3 4 or 5 in whiche time you shall also knowe yf your plantes  
20 be good  
The plante or sett muste have no olde wodde.  
A set or plante muste be a cubbite (cubit) long and purged that nothing  
be lost growing on it.  
Kepe your plantes which you occupye not forth with so that  
25 they be not hurte with sonne nor winde or any other menes put  
them under the grounde to the middeste (middle), yf you kepe them but a few  
dayes, but it you muste kepe them long unsett and especially towards  
heate put them in the yerth upp to the toppes and treade the yearth  
close unto them so that the yearth may touche them all aswell with  
30 in as without.  
Yf your plantes muste be caried farre of (off) let softe durty strawe  
be mingled with them very well and rolle them hard in a sacke  
or mate (matt) which is better the greater endes being covered with  
durtie strawe and as much as you can kepe them frome sonne  
35 and wynd and the wether be very dry dippe them some tyme  
in water  
Plantes of vines in colde places muste be sett in September  
and Aprill in temperate places in october and march in  
hote places in November and februarye yf the wether be  
40 wytte (white, i.e. snowy) they muste be sett both before and after winter.

f. 37<sup>v</sup>

1 Vines muste be sett in calme and warme dayes the yerth being  
moderately moste but rather dry than dyrty (muddy)  
Whan you plante your vines in holes either bared with a  
stake or with an augur being made right up or some what set 2 or  
5 3 in one hole and the heddes (heads) up warde standing the one a good way  
frome thother then fill the holle halfe full with sande or sym (some)  
yerthe mingled with a litle donge<sup>o</sup> of chase (hunted animals) or grape huskes then  
fill it upp with chalke or yearth that is by the laste of all  
take a litle donge<sup>o</sup> and put it aboute yt and a litle yearth  
10 upon it and treade it downe but not to harde And in no wise  
wrest (bend) nor writhe (crush) the plante let the knots that be fruitfull  
remayne above grounde.  
Sett your plantes thicke or thine[k] after the goodnes of the  
earthe the good grounde 4 sette of (off) the meane [3<sup>rd</sup>?] and the barren 3  
15 Set not your grounde with one kynde of vines but chose 4 or 5  
of the best sortes, that where one beareth not thother may set  
your vines within order and every sort by it selfe  
Whan you set your vines in a nou<sup>r</sup>sery set them thicke  
and [~~whan~~] 3 yeare after set them where they shall continewe  
20 and bring them as [~~yea~~] nigh as you can to one braunch.  
Yf your grounde be very dry leave your trenches where you  
will set your vines open a good while.



## Of laying downe or renewing vines

25 When you lay downe your vines put no donge<sup>o</sup> to them on lesse  
it be very rotten and colde within the grounde but about the  
renewed vines.

When you lay downe a vine you may chose whether you will  
put all the branches under the grounde or leave a parte therof stand  
up like a bowe and if you so do cut it that standeth up away 2 yere  
30 after or 3 which is more sure yf your vines be very olde it is  
renewed with donging<sup>o</sup> therof and nere cutting in the springe  
and so by geving the vine a wounde with a sharpe instrument  
in a faire and smouth place of the stocke (trunk) 3 or 4 fote frome the grond  
and the vine muste be often tymes digged and that wounde will  
35 newe branches cum furth to restore the vine

Yf the vine be to olde to let stande then cutte it of a litle frome the  
grounde in marche in october and november yf your grond  
be dry lay downe your vines yf it be moste in marche and  
february yf it be not rayney In high stormy and holye  
40 places lay them the fote under grounde one fote, but it is best  
to do it before winter for gathering of rottes

f. 38<sup>r</sup>

## 1 Of cutting of vines

In hote cuntres (countries) you may cutt your vines in October November or  
februarye and marche untill such tymes as the vine buddes do increase  
in cold cuntreis in february and marche onely in temperate in all the  
5 foresaid monethes (months).

So cut your vines as you may have the truncke or body therof stronge  
and if your vines be weake let it have but one heade but this some men  
of experience do deny saying it is better often to renewe the vine  
The brode (broad) croked (crooked) and weake braunches and those that growe in evil  
10 places muste be cutt away and also that braunche that groweth  
betwix two armes of the vine.

You muste in the body 3 fote above grounde leave one fayre yong  
braunche growing in a good place to renewe the olde vyne when  
neade shall require leaving ther on but one or two knottes

15 Yf you will have your vine beare greate braunches cut them  
in the spring of the moone if they beare to moche quantitie of wod  
cut them in the wane.

In fatt grounde and gentill ayer you may let your vines growe  
high but in barren burning and stepe places you muste kepe them  
20 the lower having respecte unto the nature of them.

What so ever groweth aboute the stocke or legge of the vine  
cut it away on lesse your vine requier to be renewed.

Leave no braunches growing either in tholde wood or in the very  
topp for those that be in the topp drawe out the vine to longe and  
thother will burden the vine with fruite.  
25

Yf the stocke of tholde vine be hollowe with the sonne rayne or  
hurtfull beastes cut away that which is deade and anoynte  
it with wine lighes (lees) or earth such olde barkes as be out and hung  
by take away which will cause the wine to have fewer lighes

30 scrape away also the mosse in every place. The woundes which  
 you give your vines muste be either overwhart (a cross) or rounde.  
 The vines that have knottes so fare asounder (apart) neade not be cut  
 so shorte as those that have shorter knotes the first have many  
 clusters and not greate thother greate and fewe.  
 35 Vines with long knottes muste be often dounded<sup>o</sup> and digged  
 In cutting of vines these 3 things muste be observed, leave such  
 braunches onely as be very ripe rounde and have greate and  
 rounde buddes or eies (eyes) and thicke according to the nature of the vine.  
 The soner you cutt your vine the soner it doth budde and bring  
 40 fourth moe (more) and greate braunches and more plentie of woode  
 and you cut them late they will budde late and so you shall  
 have lesse woode and moe grapes.

f. 38<sup>v</sup>

1 Cutt your vines more earely in the yeare and the fatter which  
 growith in bowches and braunches later  
 After a good vintage cutt your vines nere and after a smalle vintage  
 not so nere.

5 Of forming or fashioning vines

After the first yeare bring your vine to one heade let there be but  
 one truncke or body and the seconde yere above grounde one or two  
 eyes or buddes and cut it so long unto one or twoo buddes, untill such  
 tyme as it bring ranke<sup>o</sup> and fruitfull braunches as it waxeth in  
 10 aige (age) let it have no braunches untill such tyme as you have 4 faire  
 and there with content you. The better your grounde is the higher  
 you may let your vines growe.

The your gronde is the higher may your vine be  
 In the plane moiste feld (field) plucke the succers (sucker) frome the vines and  
 15 ridd them frome all superfluous thinges and unprofitable braunches  
 and after august when the grapes be almoste ripe cute of the  
 superfluous bowes and toppes and that for many notable causes.

When the vines must be lift upp  
 and tyed with osiarden (osiers)

20 You muste tye upp and tryme (trim) your vines before the buddes  
 wey greate yf the vines be lowe one bande will serve binding the  
 hole vine to one pole as at francforde yf it be higher 2 bandes  
 Every yere the vine muste be on bound because it is greate  
 refreshing to it

25 Of dounding<sup>o</sup> of vines and cutting  
 away unprofitable rotes

In October November february and Marche digge litle holes about  
 the vines cut away the litle upper moste rotes cause the principall  
 to decay then put donge<sup>o</sup> to them and cutt not those litle rotes hard  
 30 by the stocke but an inche frome it  
 If the winter be gentle leave your vines uncovered  
 If the winter be cold put a little pigeons donge<sup>o</sup> about the yong  
 vines whan you donge<sup>o</sup> your vines, to litle vines put litle  
 donge<sup>o</sup> and to the greate more often donging<sup>o</sup> maketh the vine fruitful.

35 Lupines make good dounge<sup>o</sup> for vines. when they be well  
 growen dige (dig) your vines and lay them aboute vine branches  
 chopped smalle and layed to the vine rotes is good donge<sup>o</sup>

#### Of digging of vines

40 In marche you muste begin to hacke or digge your vines and  
 continewe till October and when the heath is greate do it

f. 39<sup>r</sup>

1 evening and morning and leave no wedes nor rotes yf there be  
 any water standing in the vineyard drawe it away by furrowes  
 In marche you muste make hast in hacking your vines before they  
 budde full out

5 In May digge them either before the flower or after, while they  
 flower they may not be touched.

At all tymes when you digge your vines have an eye to the  
 grounde that it be nether to moiste or dry but in a meane betwene  
 bothe

10 The more you hacke your vines it is better but digge it not to depe  
 but in a meane. se (see) that the hole grounde be digged or hacked that  
 there be noe rawe earth undigged remayning specially nere the  
 vines

#### Of harmes that happen to the vines

15 Any thinge growinge nighe the vine hurteth it wherfor  
 it muste be digged or cutt away

The shadowe of tres or hedges is hurtfull to them and ther  
 fore to be cutt or lopped.

20 Somtyme to moche heate hurteth them you muste cover  
 the rotes well with strawe or earth and a litle water them  
 Coles nutte tres, and bay tres be not frendly to vines  
 There may no cattaile cum into the vineyard and therefore  
 fence your grounde well.

25 In winter if you feare froste cut them lowe by the gronde  
 and kepe your truncke as lowe as you can for feare of colde  
 wether. In some places they tie the vine together with a rushe  
 and bend it to the grounde laying on the toppes some earth  
 that the (they) rise not when winter is done then raise them up  
 30 agayne.

If the froste have not cleane killed the vine but the tender  
 braunches then cutt it of in the yonge braunche if any part  
 therof be left alive if not in the olde truncke.

35 It chaungeth often when the vine hath both braunches and  
 grapes the froste killeth it in such place occupye such vines  
 as come forth late. If any kinde of wormes eate or hurte  
 your vines gather them and treade them under the grounde  
 under your fote or els burne them.

40 Some tyme in greate heate cometh a smalle rayne which  
 poisoneth the vines, plante vines in such placs as they  
 may abide all stormes.

f. 39<sup>v</sup>

1 Against a tempest nothing will helpe but prayer  
 If the vine be wounded with the mattocke or corst (large cleaver) tie the wounde  
 close and put earth aboute it mingled with shepe or gots (goat's) donge<sup>o</sup>  
 If the vine have so many braunches that it can not maynteyne  
 5 it all and the fruite in the moneth of may you muste plucke  
 the superfluous away leaving few and stronge to the yonge vine leave  
 not past 2 or 3 heades and if you lewe (leave) fewer this moneth you  
 muste plucke away the succers.  
 Then muste you plucke away the suckers and superfluits of leaves  
 10 when they will easely breake betwene the fingers these make the  
 grape fatter stringeth the matter in tyme to come and causeth the  
 sonne to come better to the grape.  
 Some tyme the vines for very weaknes bringeth furth (forth) smal  
 braunches and grapes which muste be holding with donging<sup>o</sup>,  
 15 ofte digging and in cutting. some vines be so ranke<sup>o</sup> and fatt, that they  
 shutes (shoot) the vines with greatnes of braunches and choke both them  
 selves and there neygbours and suffer not their fruite to ripe which  
 muste be holpen (helped) with leaving many knottes with seldome digging, not  
 20 donging<sup>o</sup> cutting away of braunches and succors<sup>m</sup> may and taking  
 away of boughes in cold placs, and specially where the grapes  
 do rote plucke of them and braunche by the side 30 dayes before the  
 vintage and that fore muste onely be left which defendeth the  
 sonne in the toppe.  
 You muste also diligently watch your vineyard in the reping  
 25 frome menne and dogges and there towards highe wayes set such  
 vines as be not pleasaunte to eate and yet make good wyne.  
 Thurshes (Thrushes) also will eate the grapes who muste be fraid (scared) with  
 cordes or other fearefull signes set up or els they muste be watched  
 yf these thinges will not fray them there muste a litle cotage  
 30 be sett up high one standing in yt all day to fray them.

(The manuscript continues with notes on making wine.)

Lansdowne MS 101/9f. 43<sup>r</sup>

1

Certayne especiall notes for ffishe,  
 Conyes, Pigeons, Artochokes, Strawberries  
 Muske Millons (melons) Pompons<sup>o</sup> Roses Cheryes  
 and other fruite trees.

f. 45<sup>r</sup>

1

Artochokes  
 To make greate Artochokes.

5

To make your Artochoke great, youe must first make  
 your mould<sup>o</sup> good, and helpe the same with Tanners or  
 Tailores shreds, shepes dunge or of pigeons. Next youe  
 must provyde slippes of a good kynd, thirdly to remove  
 and chaunge the Artochoke him selfe at the least every  
 third yere as ye doe the saffron ground. ffourthly to pull  
 away the slippes in Marche, and agayne a monthe befoer  
 michaelmas. Last of all to suffer but one Apple to  
 growe on a roote.

10

Columella writeth that the Artochoke taketh most  
 delight with Ashes, which will preserve him from wormes  
 wherunto he ys most subiecte.

15

Strawberyes  
 To make strawberries greate and to  
 continewe till after michaelmas.

20

After they be sett in the ground, and growen ready  
 to flowre, all such stringes as growe out of them  
 must be weded, and pulled from them, and not to  
 suffer the Strawberye roote one to touche an other.

25

Also to have twoe Tubbes, the one filled with water  
 and with shepes dunge, or pigeon dounge<sup>o</sup>, and to  
 water them therwith, till they be almost ripe, and  
 afterwarde to provyde clene water in the other  
 tubbe, and therwith vij or viij daies to water them  
 and this beinge used after the first pryde is past  
 ye shall have them flowre agayne and beare as  
 freshlye, and as greate or greater after michaelmas  
 then they did beare in June and Julye.

30

f. 45<sup>v</sup>

1

Millons and pompons<sup>o</sup>  
 To make millons or pompons<sup>o</sup> to smell like  
 Roses or muske<sup>o</sup>.

5

Laie your Millon or pompon<sup>o</sup> sede first in water of  
 damaske (damask rose) or some perfume, or laie them emongst drye  
 Rose leaves and than sowe them together, and the fruite

will not onely retheyne the savour of Roses, but also are  
verye good to quench your thirst in a burninge fever.

#### Roses

10 To make Roses and chery trees to beare timelye

Delve° well your Rose settes about the roote nere twoe  
spannes bredthe in the springe season, and laie freshe  
moulde° of very good earth and some pigeon dounge°  
15 about them, and water the same with hote liquid and  
they will shoote forthe, and beare Roses very soone.  
And the like art will serve for cherries and other fruite  
to come before their ordinarye time.

#### ffruite trees.

To make cherries, and other fruite greate.

20 The readiest, and easiest waie for this purpose ys, to prune  
often your trees, and to leave fewe water, or superfluous  
bowes, or to graffe the cherye, the Quince, or fruite tree  
with an other of the greatest sorte.

25 To make a barren tree not onelie beare plentifully,  
but also to taste of Muske°, cloves, or any swete savour.

A good way to remedy barrennesse of trees is recorded by  
St Luke in the parable of the ffigge tree to witt: to digge  
round aboute the roote, and dunge yt.

f. 46<sup>f</sup>

1 An other way is, to temper somewhat before the springe,  
scammony and water together; and put it into the hole  
of the tree, beinge first, with a great percer (gimlet) or wimble°, bored  
sloperwise about the midst of the bodye, to the pithe, and then stoppe  
5 the hole with a pyn of the same tree, or of an other, and yt  
will afterwarde beare plentifully.

And if youe put in the hole so perced all manner of spices  
of ryche odour, as bawme (balm), Muske°, Ambre°, and suche like:  
the ffruite, aswell in vertue, as in savour, will represente  
10 the same effecte.

Some use, to the like purpose, to soke the cyons in honye  
and water tempered with the powder of cloves, Ginger,  
and Synomon, or suche like, before they do graffe  
them.

15 And to change the colour, aswell as the taste, they will  
laie in the same water, brasill (brazilwood), saunders (powdered sandalwood) saffron, or  
Tournesale (sunflower), and infund (pour) the foresaid liquour in the cleft°  
of the tree wherein yt shalbe grafted.

Also yf youe do moyst the trees at the roots, with lyes (lees)  
 20 of wyne, or decoction of beanes, or chambrelye of men longe  
 preserved for the nones (purpose) in tubbes or cesternes, yt will not  
 onely quicken, and revive an old or barren tree, but also  
 preserve the fruite from shedding.

Against rottinge of trees.

25 Make after Martilmas (Martinmas) a hole with a percer (gimlet) under the  
 place that rotteth, that the water which cause the  
 rottinge of trees may issue forthe.  
 Or cleave the greatest roote of the tree, and putt into  
 the clifte<sup>o</sup> a thinne slatt of harde stone, and lett the

f. 46<sup>v</sup>

1 roote stand open till about th'end of winter, and the  
 said stone to remayne still in him, then putte plentye  
 of fatt, and riche earthe; and this may ye practise  
 also against barrennesse of trees, by percinge ij or iij of the  
 5 greatest roots, and stoppinge them afterwards with a wedge of wood.

Also suffer no two to stand under, or even with the levell  
 of your waters, but farre above, for ells the water will  
 cause them to moze (moss), and rotte assuredly: a thinge espe-  
 cially to be reformed in your L. gardens, and Orchard.

10 Against mozenesse ('mossiness') of trees.

When the tree waxeth mozye, (which ys the mother of barrenness)  
 he would not onely be often clenched after a rayne with a  
 grate<sup>o</sup> of wood, or a roughe hearye<sup>1</sup> cloute (stick), and have the  
 superfluous bowes pruned of in ffebruarye or Marche,  
 15 but also have his roots uncovered, from Christenmas, tyll  
 Candlemas, at the least, and then their must be some good  
 earth putt under them, mingled with good compasse of  
 Oxen, or pigeons, to heate and comfoer (comfort) them agayne.

20 Against sicknesse of trees, and first  
 against the sicknes of the Gall<sup>o</sup>.

Th'inwarde deseases will showe them selves in the out-  
 ward barke, and namely, the sicknes of the gall<sup>o</sup>, which  
 will eate the barke of the trees like a Cankar, and  
 therefore it must be opened with a knife aboute february  
 25 or Marche, that the evill humours may distill forthe, &  
 asmuche as is inserted, must be pared awaye with a fine  
 Chesill, and after a fewe daies, cover the wound agayne  
 with a plaister of Oxe dounge<sup>o</sup>, Saige, and clay, or a litle  
 unsleked (undiluted) lyme blended together; And the like defense

---

<sup>1</sup> Possibly a misspelling of 'heavy'

47<sup>r</sup>

1 would be used against the rayne, when ye cutt of a great  
bowghe from any tree: and it will both save the tree from  
rottinge, and the sooner close agayne.

Against the wormes of trees

5 Ye shall soone perceyve this infection, by the swellinge  
of the barke of the tree, which must be launced (cut open) as before,  
and the wormes, and all that is putrefyed drawne forthe;  
and the like plaister laied therunto as before, and the  
lyes of wyne powred upon the rootes.

10 Also Ashes, temperd with Oyle olive, and myrre, will  
destroy the wormes of any tree: so will the powder made  
of Calamynt, dryed and stamped with Brimstone.

It is very good also to strake (streak) the tree with the mixture  
made of ij parts of Oxe pisse, and <sup>a</sup> thirde parte of claye,  
15 or to washe the tree with oxe, or cowe pisse, vinegre, and ashes.

Against Irwigges.

Hange old shoes, stopped with haye on the tree one nighte,  
and all the Irwigges will come in.

Against snailes, & mettes (mites), and Ants.

20 Sowte (soot) of Chymneis, or sawe dust, so that it be of Oke, or  
ashes mingled with unsleked lyme, and beaten in a powder,  
layed to the roots of younge trees, are especiall preferd  
vaives against suche vermyn, so that youe renewe youre  
ashes, or sowte, or sawe duste, after everye rayne, and doe  
25 keape the rootes moyst, at all other times, with plenty of water  
And if, at the springe time, youe look well aboute your  
trees, youe shall finde them to have wearts, or lytle

f. 47<sup>v</sup>

1 knobbes which will prove unto snailes, except ye doe at  
the first, faire and softelye rubbe them with old clothes, and  
so kill them.

Against caterpillers.

5 To use fumigacions, or smokes in the springe time, under your  
trees with strawe, hay, thatch of houses, and Tanners oze (liquid from a tan-vat), or  
oxe dunge blended withall, ys very good against frostes, and  
east windes, which commonly cometh in England about the  
blossominge time, and bredeth Caterpillers.

10 Also if the springe be drye, to cast either freshe, or salte  
water, with squirtes of brasse, or wood, made for the nones,  
upon your younge trees, and to keape them alwaies moyste,  
hathe bene tryed very good against the Caterpillers.



To keape, and preserve fruite very longe.

- 15 Ffirst they must be gathered by hand, and without any brouse (bruise),  
and in a faire drye daie, and in the decreasinge of the moone  
secondly they must be kept without wynd, and untemperate  
colde. thirdly they would be laied in dry places, either  
uppon dry wheat strawe laied thinne, or upon bare bordes,  
20 wher fire is not farre of, all the winter, or ells duringe  
the hard wether to be covered with strawe and haye  
above that, or to be kepte in a wodden presse after that they  
have bene first laied in a heape and swette.  
Some laye them in a barlye mowe<sup>o</sup>, or swete wheaten chaffe,  
25 some close them in small vessells, or in a Cesterne, in suche  
sorte, that the fruite taketh no ayre. some laie them in  
vessells of Juniper, or Cypresse wood, or wrappe them in  
paste of <sup>c</sup> claie or mortar, or hange them nighe fyre in nettes of  
yarne in the winter.
- 30 But a good and ready waie ys, to close youre especiall  
ffruite, first in barrells of fine sand, or dry salte, beinge
- f. 48<sup>r</sup>
- 1 first so packt together, that one toucheth not an other, and  
lett the barrell stand in some drye place that the salte  
doe not waxe moyste, and geve with the wether.

Add MS 61822

Text in the left hand column represents marginal notes that were written in this household book. Some of these were squeezed in after the original entries were made, and thus they have not been included in the line numbering. Passages that appear in italics are passages that were repeated more or less exactly in the first (ff. 55<sup>r</sup>-62<sup>v</sup>) and second (ff. 104<sup>v</sup>-109<sup>f</sup>) set of 'rules of husbandry'.

f. 55 <sup>r</sup>	1	Rules of husbandry taken owt of Vergil and auctors well approved
Signes to knowe the difference of grownds	5	To know barren grownd take a figge fraile fill him with the earthe & the water of some clere springe: so mixe it & wringe forthe the subtance if it be barren it will seme bitter and unsavery in taste.
good erthe		yf the erthe beinge wrought with moysture in the forme of a ba[ll shall (being thrown from you) remaine whole withowt crackinge or cleve (stick) to the fingers in the manner of pitche
erth good for rootes	10	it argueth a good & fertile earthe a dry erthe is best for all kynd of Rootes, but a fatt & moyst erthe breedeth best cabbedge; oyneons, lettice & suche like
barren grownd	15	That grownd is barren where the potters erthe <sup>o</sup> or peple (pebble) stone are growinge. the sandy grownd scarsly afoords any dewe neithe[r is fitt for wheat, where the stonne groweth that soone resolveth into sand, suche as is commonly on the sydes of cliff[s & hills
good for corne terra densa	20	yf you digge a hole or trenche & cast forth the erthe and throwing it in againe yf it surmount or ryse above the res[t of the ground the soil is fertile.
good for the vyne terra rara		but if it suffiseth not to fill the trenche againe it is demed lesse frutefull. The first is good for corne, the last for the vyne
good ground	25	That grownd that bretheth (breathes) forth mysts drinketh it againe, & yelde[th it forthe often, which is alwayes clad with grasse neither dothe caws[e iron to rust with his salt humor or hath ranke <sup>o</sup> dewes on him such as commonly lyeth betwene to hills or is overflowen with the slyme of some ryver such ys fitt for corne grasse & the vyn[e
best tillage <sup>o</sup> for clay land	30	<i>That grownd that hath felt the force of two sommers &amp; two wint[ers answereth the desire of the gredy (greedy) husbandman as to fallowe<sup>o</sup> clay land at twelvtyde or candlemas &amp; to sowe it at Michaelmas hath part of that winter the next sommer, all the next winter &amp; all the sommer folowing before the corne come to the hooke<sup>o</sup> &amp; so may be sayd for have the tillage<sup>o</sup> of two winters &amp; two sommers.</i>
time of tillage <sup>o</sup> for good land	35	<i>if the land be cold as clay land, or of it self very frutfull beginne to fallow<sup>o</sup> in the first monethes so shall the mowltr[e<sup>o</sup> clodds dissolve with the sowthwynds &amp; dusty sommer season the scattered clodds with hott sunnshinyng *but if the grownd be light or sandy it shall suffice to eare<sup>o</sup> it with a shallofw</i>
time of tillage <sup>o</sup> for barren land	40	<i>furrowe<sup>o</sup> under the signe Arcturus which is abowt the dogge days there leste weedes overcome the cherefull corne here leste the smale sappe &amp; frutfull moysture foresake the barren land</i>

- rules of husbandry 45 somtymys it is good to burne the stubble for the land therby doth  
gether (gather) harte, or els throwghe the heate the ile & unprofita[ble  
moysture do sweate owt. or els dothe unclose more brethinge  
place wherby a freshe sappe coms into the grownd or dot[h  
more harden it & bynd the gaping vaines that the ferve[nt  
heate of the sunne nor penetrable cold of the northwy[nd  
50 may not scorche it
- dragging oft dragging (harrowing) is profitable & earing<sup>o</sup> the land overthwhart (crosswise)  
is no lesse commodious.
- overranke<sup>o</sup> corne In rank<sup>o</sup> grownd it is good to crape the corne in grasse  
lest it shold lidge (lie) with the helt (hold) of the eare & so become ligh[t  
f. 55<sup>v</sup>  
good c]orne  
yea]re  
r]ules for  
b]arly sowing
- 5 Late sowen barly especially in light land proveth best,  
if raine come by whitsounyde (pentecost)  
a sommer fallow<sup>o</sup> in heavy land is chesest (choisest) for barly.  
yf the nutt tree beare much frute ther folowethe a good  
corne yere. But if he abounde in Leaves & fewe nutts  
10 appeare the corne will yeld light & longe in fillinge  
the bushells.
- T]o have  
bigge &  
g]ood corne
- 15 some do put their seed corne in a bagge & the night before  
they sowe it lay it in rotten dinge<sup>o</sup> deepe could & the next  
morning sowe it & althowghe it be in a bare land it will  
prove the better corne.
- l]ying corne in  
di]nge  
proveth good  
g]ood to sowe  
messlyne<sup>o</sup>
- 20 fortnight before michaelmas it is good sowing of messlyne<sup>o</sup>  
which<sup>is</sup> at the equinoctius.  
*yf thow sowe<sup>barly</sup> [~~w]heate] & make accompt of a faire eare let  
the starrs named vergiliae or the seven starrs (Pleiades) be sett before  
thow commytt thy seede to the erthe, for many have sowen  
25 before the setting of the starre maia (one of the Pleiades) & have benne  
deceaved with otes (oats) & light corne.~~*
- ba]rlic  
[~~w]heate]  
sowinge  
oc]casum  
maiae [?]e vy<sup>th</sup>  
of A]prill  
w]heat after  
p]ulse~~
- sowe wheate after pulse<sup>o</sup> for hempe & otes burne the  
Land & the redd popy do waste bothe the grownd and  
corne.
- t]yme to digg  
o]r till<sup>o</sup>
- 30 It is not good to digge or till<sup>o</sup> the grownd the wynd being  
in the northe but the warme sowth wynds do open the  
powers of the erthe then sprots (sprouts) the grasse with ther  
tender sappe & plesant sunn shinyng.  
*dry twifallow<sup>o</sup> in clay grownd breedeth purotes<sup>o</sup>  
35 dry sowing do bury wheat & breed poppy  
if a raine do flaishe (splash) uppon a twifallow<sup>o</sup> it breedeth thistles  
a weatt springe breedeth thistles, & all other kynd of  
weeds if it be cold withall flashing breedeth popy & mawdren<sup>o</sup> apon sowing*
- [?] in  
sowing  
wheat
- 40 To sow graybald wheate in clay or deepe land betymys (early)  
in the yere, & culverbald or white wheat in stonnerushe<sup>o</sup>
- ty]me to  
sowe

- w]heat  
n]otes for  
tr]ees & the  
ls]nd
- or light Land in the later tyme of sowing.  
The kernells or nutts degenerat & become farr worse  
then the frute from whenc they came & besyds are longe  
in growing before they come to perfection.
- 45 withyes° prosper best in ryver sydes, Aldere (Alder tree) in mareishe growndes,  
& Aishes (Ash tree) in stonny or rocky mountains.
- sett [?]e vyne
- The vyne must be sett in februar, the erthe abowt him often  
turned, at first spruting forthe of the vyne onely pintche of  
the superfluous [issnes?] such as grow wrigled (twisted) withowt any leafe  
50 after when the grape apperes & young branches grow stroung  
toward mydsomer, nyck of the superfluous cyons (scions) the grape may  
prosper the better.
- f. 56<sup>r</sup>  
differenc of  
sowinge
- 1 *in deepe land sowe wheat a myddrudge & querne the clifte & make the furrows°  
smale*  
*in stonne rushe° land sowe a furrowe°, & make the furrows° smale & sett them  
an edge, for if you make the furrowes° bigge as at falowinge° (be the land*  
5 *never so well in temper ye shall bury [so?] muche, specially toward the end of  
sowing*  
*becawse the corne being not able to<sup>pass</sup> throwgh the furrowe° or betwene the  
furrows° being brode or thick runneth under to fynd a way owt untill it  
be attainte & so dyeth, as experyenc teacheth [~~besyds~~] besyds the sunne  
wanting force at that tyme to multer° the clodds ys the cawse that the corne*  
10 *ys attaintt before it canne fynd a way owt, where otherwyse the furrows°  
being smale & set up an end the corne issueth owt betwene the furowes°  
howe soever the yere falleth owt*  
sowe good wheat somewhat thick for that the corne being bigg [sowne] <sup>soone</sup> filleth  
the hand & deceaveth the sower
- the frassisse in  
tillage°
- fallowing°  
best
- 15 *fallow° as shalowe as may be, so as you ere it cleane, with smale furrowes°,  
& lay the greets (furrows°) crosse, for if you fallowe° deepe the thicknes of the  
clodds*  
*cawseth that most somers, the slender raine cannot pearce the grownd  
throughlye wherby to bringe it to good tillage°, cleane fallowe° dothe muche  
availe, for if the dryeth° will not suffer to twyfallowe°, the land by that*  
20 *meanes wilbe withowt weedes & kynder to the seede.*  
smale rudge° ys best: *in clay land to goe amydd rudge°, eight furrowes° to a  
rudge°, in stonnrushe° lande fyve furrows° to a rudge° suffiseth to go a furrowe°.*  
in clay land if you go a furrowe° you must *strike upp the core which cawseth  
the rudge° to lye higher & cleaner for the water to passe in the furrowe°,*  
25 *if your rudge° be very greate as sixteene or twentie furrows° you must go  
a mydd rudge° at twyfallowing° as well as at sowinge, or els the sydes of the  
rudge°*  
*will lye flatt & sugging (soaking) in water, & therefore in all kynd of tillage° a  
smale*  
*rudg° cleanly layd up is best.*
- quantitie of  
rudge°
- at sowing
- to make corne  
prove very  
good in a bare  
& barren land
- 30 ffirst take five or six gallons of water & put it into a brode cowle° or other brode  
vessell, then take as muche rotten cowe dinge° well rotted & fatt, as suffiseth  
to make the water very thick & muddy, as thick as growt, this donne  
take a bushell or lesse of wheat or barly according to the quantitie of  
the water, & in the [mord] mornynge abowt ix of the clock, put the corne  
into the vessell with the water & dinge° & stirr it very hard with a lytle  
35 showell (shovel) made for the purpose for the space of one whole hower; then

lett it stand still & abowt two of the clock in the after noone, stirr  
it againe the space of one hower, then let it stand all night, & on  
the morowe morninge sowe it in bare land & it will prove very  
good corne. but first ye must drayne the water from the the corne through a tappe

another

- 40 hole & then sowe the dinge<sup>o</sup> & corne together.  
Take one [~~bushell~~] <sup>peck</sup> of bay salt & [~~one~~] <sup>half a</sup> bushell of wheat & mixt it well  
together, & so sowe it, & it wilbe fare better corne, which hathe benn tryed,  
or els make a stroung bryne with cold water & bay salt mixt together  
& but corne therin according to the quantitie & [~~stil~~] stirre <sup>it</sup> as above ys  
45 sayd of the water & dinge<sup>o</sup> & the next mornynge sowe it, this hathe great  
probabilitie to prove the corne the better for that we reade of a  
husbandman having occasion to fetch a bushell of wheat over some part  
of the sea or salt water it happened that in landing [~~hame~~] amongst other  
things he let fall his bagg of wheat betweene the bote & the shore &  
50 being destitute at that present, of a croke to get it upp againe he let it lye  
till the mornynge & then having taken it up a land he feared to sowe  
it lest the salt water had kylld the nature of the seede, yet not withstanding  
being pore & not able to buy more presentlie he de<sup>te</sup>rmyned to put it in adventure  
which when he had sowen, at harvest it proved fare better then other corne  
55 sowen in the same land. In Cornwall also they fetch the sea sand five or  
six myles to ding<sup>o</sup> their land, such ys the frutfullnes they fynd [~~it~~] in it  
& therefore it is to be thoughe that the sand being washed contynually with  
the water hath no substanc in it to fatt the land, but onely the saltnes which  
bredeth  
a likely hood that the corne steeped in bryne as aforesayd may work the like  
60 effect.

f. 56<sup>v</sup>

another way  
to help land  
that ys barren

- 1 Take water & ding<sup>o</sup> rotted & mixe them well together & let it stand so for  
certeine dayes then take your corne & put into this mixture & stirre  
it well together & let it stand twelve howers [~~song~~] some would have  
it stand 18 howers some 36: howrs ye may make tryall of all &  
5 use the best way & when you will sowe it drayne owt the water cleane  
& sowe the dinge<sup>o</sup> & corne together.

a note to prove  
that salt ys a  
fatter of the  
grownd

- yt hathe benne proved by experyenc [~~that~~] by one dwelling at Clapham  
that bay salt ys a greate fatter of the grownd who for experyenc  
sake did sowe two bushell of salt uppon a little platt of barren  
10 pasture grownd which therby became very greene & frutefull & so  
contynueth the <sup>salt</sup> pitte at Critche being filled with rayne water  
& emptied uppon the grownd next adioyninge did cawse the earth  
to become so fatt that it exceeded any ding<sup>o</sup> to better the corne  
grownd. So as althowghe there may <sup>be</sup> alleadged the example of the  
15 malefactor whose grownds were torne upp & sowen with salt  
to make them barren, it was in the great quantity therof with  
which his heate & drynes did burne & exhaust the sappe  
therof according to the proverb *omne nimium vertitur in vitium*  
& not the [~~no~~] qualitie therof, if we shall rightlie measure the effect  
20 therof growing by experyenc to the certeine knowledg of the quality of the  
quantitie be it more or lesse for ye shall reade this as a principle that  
salt seasoneth all thinges, which grownded uppon experienc confirmethe  
these reasons that it preserveth ech thinge from putrefacion which otherwise  
would rott, become <sup>unsavory</sup> & soone retorne to erthe wherhenc it had his  
beginnyng

25 always having respect to the quantity which being applyed in due proporcion  
 cawseth that the qualitie therof worketh effectually according to ~~the~~ your  
 expectacion, as for example yf you would season a dishe full of mylk or  
 other ~~lik~~ licor to make it touthsome & savoring to the last ye put in a  
~~sam~~ smale quantitie of salt, but if you put in great quantitie therof  
 30 you fynd it over brackishe brynishe, & unsavery, & so by this example ye may  
 conceave of all other; ffurthermore to make common salt to become  
 vegetable salt, suche as Mr Platt affirmeth to be in ech creture, tree,  
 & herbe wherby they do florishe, spring, & contynue it <sup>is</sup> requisite to heare  
 his reasons hereon & then to come to the true knowledge therof by pra<sup>c</sup>tice  
 35 & experience. first Mr Platt settethe downe this example that ~~same~~ smale  
 heapes of dinge<sup>o</sup> being layd on the grownd to the bettring thereof as the use  
 ys in most places, the fattnes thereof ys not the cawse of the frutfullnes  
 thereof according to common sence, but the fattnes of vegetable salt which  
 in so greate quantitie ys engendered therein which ys known by the encrease  
 40 of salte pete <sup>& which</sup> where the residence of dinge<sup>o</sup> ys <sup>is</sup> more <sup>ingendred</sup> then any ~~of~~  
 othere  
 place, which if the onely fattnes therof [~~y~~] should worke theeffect howe cann  
 the sea sand (which ys used in Cornwall for speciall good dinge<sup>o</sup>) being in vewe  
 bothe hungry & dry become so frutfull, but that <sup>it</sup> appeareth aswell in  
 the tone (the one) as the other that the vegetable salt incorporated in <sup>ech of them</sup>  
~~them bothe~~  
 45 ys the onely cawse that workethe the good effect, & to make better proffe  
 thereof (sayeth he) but note this conseynent, that when you shall  
 at sowing fynd dispearce those heapes abrode ~~for~~ so cleane from the place  
 wheare the heapes stode that there remainethe no signe of dinge<sup>o</sup> theron  
 yet shall you fynd at harvest ~~more ranke~~ come <sup>more rank<sup>o</sup></sup> in those placs where the  
 50 heapes stode then in any other place where the dinge<sup>o</sup> lyeth thickest & the  
 reason ys for ~~the~~ that the rayne water beatethe the vegetable salt into the  
 betome & so pearceth the earthe & is the unseen substance that cawsethe the  
 corne to be better then els where, where the dinge<sup>o</sup> is most thicke, but  
 because the smale fertilitie of the salt marshes may be induced for a  
 55 contrary argument, the cawse therof ys not the saltnes, but the overgreate  
 quantitie therof by the often overflowing of the sea & to prove this my assertion  
 true ~~bothe~~ for the frutfullnes of salt, having regard to the qualitie of the

f. 57<sup>r</sup>

this is con-  
 firmed in the  
 freshe warfe  
 at Laurenc  
 week which is  
 most frutfull

1 quantitie; but ma<sup>r</sup>ke the exceeding fattnes of suche grownds & wharfs as havinge  
 benne somtymys so overflowen with the sea water are nowe excluded therhenc by  
 the banks & sea walls, howe farr they differ from the salt warfs & you may  
 conceave by naturall reson that the brackishe & overbrynishe substanc remainyng  
 5 on the salt ~~set~~ wharfs being maytayned by the often overflowing of the sea  
 water  
 ys the cawse of the sterilitie therof & that the saltnes remainyng on  
 the freshe wharfes having no farther maytayn<sup>a</sup>nc from the sea to encrease  
 the quantitie by means of the rayne & <sup>in [folnere?]</sup> of the sunne and wynd is  
 so incorporated with the earthe that of barren it is become most fatt &  
 10 fertile. These resons being rightly pondered to make salt vegetable  
 (which ys no more but the right & fitt mixture of salt with erthe or other  
 subtaunc incorporating them together in suche sortt that the defecte of  
 nature may be holpen therby) first due consyderacion must be had of  
 the quantitie & qualitie therof. secondly wherbyer salt mixt with dinge<sup>o</sup>  
 15 the dinge<sup>o</sup> being hott, moyst, & bractishe (brackish) of it self be best to make it

vegetable, to increase the substance therof [~~according to the example~~]  
 or [~~els~~] mixt, or by sowing incorporate with the erth as in the argument of the  
 sea sand, or els in some <sup>quantitie</sup> be stowed the grownd & so become vegetable  
 bying

incorporate by the rayne & varietie of the wether, as in the argument

20 of the salt wharfe become freshe being secluded from the salt water  
 which <sup>is best</sup> [~~of those~~] to chuse which to refuse, practise must [~~must~~] make tryall  
 & experyenc confirme. I thinke also if due regard be had of the nature  
 of the earthe as the coldnes of the clay, the heat & dryth (dryness) of sand, & the  
 propertie of good mould<sup>o</sup> become barren by often manuring it much awayleth

25 to the effecting of <sup>a</sup> good conclusion.

of twifalowe<sup>o</sup>

*note that although experyenc willetth to beware of drye twifallowe<sup>o</sup> for wheat,  
 in claye land to avoyde purotes<sup>o</sup>, in stonne rushe<sup>o</sup> & sand for feare of poppye  
 & other like weeds, yet of two evells yt is good to chuse the least for if the  
 sommer be moyst, the land withowt twyfalowe<sup>o</sup> in clay land become [f] so full of  
 grasse,*

30 *in stonnrushe<sup>o</sup>, & sand, so rank<sup>o</sup> of all sorts of weeds that at sowing they being  
 but*

*partlye torned in & those on the toppe beaten in with the rayne do take suche  
 deepe roote before the hard tyme of winter, that in the springe they encrease  
 above the corne & keepe it [~~downe~~] under & do take away the goodnes of the  
 soyle <sup>for their nourishment</sup> which*

35 *otherwyse wold be converted to thencrease & maynten<sup>anc</sup> of the corne, the grasse  
 in clay land being torned to beanetts<sup>o</sup> is a greate eater & spoile of the wheate, &  
 the*

*other weeds in lighter land so hurtfull, that it is better in clay land to thwart<sup>o</sup> it  
 [~~light~~] which is the best way to kill the couche<sup>o</sup> in light land to twifalowe<sup>o</sup> it  
 which*

40 *killeth all weeds already growen upp, but if the sommer be dry & the land cleane  
 at the tyme of twifalowe<sup>o</sup>, it is better to leave it untwifalowed the<sup>n</sup> otherwyse for  
 the [~~inff~~] inconvenienc ys greater that commethe of twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in suche case, then  
 to leave it undonne & that ys this, if uppon your dry twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in deepe land  
 folowe muche weete the land wilbe so wet ye shall hardly sowe it, besydes the  
 inconvenyenc before remembred, the not twifalowe<sup>o</sup>, ys but the cawse the land  
 ryseth*

*somwhat more whole which is remedyed in taken of smale furrows<sup>o</sup> <sup>at sowinge</sup>  
 howsoever the yere*

45 *fallethe owt; but if the land be weedye & must needs have a dry twifalowe<sup>o</sup>  
 a resonable wett sowing do much helpe that inconvenyenc.*

of twifalowe<sup>o</sup>  
 in barly land

50 *if the grownd be wett after a wett wynter [~~the grownd~~] the grownd at sowinge  
 besyds the breeding of grasse & weeds it will ryse whole & cold under the  
 [~~gra~~] dragge, yea sometymys in stonnrushe<sup>o</sup> land, but if it be twifalowed<sup>o</sup> it will  
 drye more, fall better, & [~~re~~] the rudge<sup>o</sup> lye more playner to heale the seede  
 so as a twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in barly land howsoever the temper be [~~be~~] ys best, for the  
 barly*

*sowen in dust ys best corne, but if it may be the rather<sup>o</sup> in hevye land, the  
 better, for then although it ryseth whole at twifalowing<sup>o</sup> yet either the frost or  
 varietye of wether by dryeth<sup>o</sup> & moysture will molter the cloddes, that it shall not  
 clynge but regard must be had as nye as maye be that the twifalowe<sup>o</sup> be not*

of wheate  
 sowinge

55 *yt ys tryed by experienc that if wheate be sowen two cropps together in clay land  
 it will turne muche to purotes<sup>o</sup> if it be drye sowen it encrease the purotes<sup>o</sup>*

*much more; also a dry twifalowe° bredethe puotes° but wett sowing dothe somewhat*

60 *helpe in light land wise sowing of wheate one after another dothe encrease land fetches (vetch), cawsethe the corne to be light, [~~& smale~~] shorte & smale eared &*

*being sown dry dothe worke the like effecte in clay land one yere to wheate another to beanes ys alwayes best for the land & most proffitt note also that yf wheat be dry sown althoughe the yere [~~ben~~] be never so weatt after it will*

65 *not prove so good corne as that which ys sown wett.*

f. 57<sup>v</sup>

tillage° of  
barlye land

1 *yf barly land in hevy grownd be turned to smale rudge° so as it may be somewhat hye on the toppe of the rudge° in a weatt yere it savethe it best from drowning or being hurt with weatt because the barly on the rudge° shall always prove well if the yere be drye yet in cold land the copped rudge° takethe litle hurte by*

5 *means the heate ys more kindly to cold land, & better it ys to abyde the hazard of a dry yere in cold land with [~~eoppe~~] the rudge° somewhat rownd then to lay them*

*flatte & with a weatt yere to be drowned which tayntethe the barlye clyngethe (sticks)*

*the grownd & cawseth that the eare sildome commeth owt of the hore & seing it ys a generall rule that howsoever the land be layd, the varietye of the yere*

10 *maye prevent your entent it ys good according to the proverbe to do for the best & not to lyve still careles of the worst & of two evells to chuse the leste in stonnerushe° land laye yt as flatt as maye be for if the yere prove wett it nothing hurteth suche land, yf it prove drye the flatter it lyethe the lesse it is subiect to the heate & driethe of the sonne which if the rudge°*

15 *ly hye wilbe parcht, taynted & half withered. & towchinge the tyme of sowinge in hevy land somewhat rathe° ys best so at the frost be gonne, that it may take roote betymes, otherwyse if great wett come in maij it tayntethe the barly clingeth the grownd & makethe the [~~a~~] eare shorte if it fall owt drye [~~yt ha~~] yet having taken good roote it will prove reasonable eare, in stonnrush° land*

20 *sowing late ys best for<sup>vf</sup> a wett yere come, or beinge dry some rayne fall before mydsomer the eare proveth faier & the straw longe yf it be rathe° sown[~~g~~] howsoever the yere falleth owt bothe strawe & eare wilbe shorte. But this regard must always be had (howsoever it falleth owt aft<sup>r</sup>ward) that the land be mallow & in good temper at sowing for the want therof in all kinde of sowing provethe*

25 *badd be the yere never so seasonable & good.*

*note that in land apt to breed puotes° flashing uppon sowing cawseth the puotes°*

*to ioncrease by means they being then come upp or at the lest a chisome (shoot) [~~which~~]*

30 *<sup>with</sup> the beating of the rayne <sup>on</sup> the earthe are partly dicoverd being before hidd with the earthe partly lying on the toppe; in the turnyng of the earthe with the beating of the rayne are settled & rooted a newe which otherwyse those which are under the earthe the <sup>clouds</sup> [~~lying it~~] would multer° still uppon them & bury them the other lying on the toppe would wither & vanishe [~~that~~] this rule ys to be noted also in all other weedes being on the grownd at sowinge tyme, especially of grasse which breeding bennetts° ys very hurtfull to wheate*

35 *note in falowing° of wheat land, it ys good to ere hevy land betymes in the yere that the heat of the somer may multer° & dissolve the clodds in light land about mydsomer that the great heate dry not the substance therof overmuch but in light land suche as ys unapt to bred weeds*

tyme of  
sowing  
note that ano  
1596 late  
sowyng was  
attaint by  
means great  
wett came  
when barly  
had scant  
taken roote or  
had any harte  
mense maij

sowing wheat

tyme of  
falowing°  
wheate land



- ~~[it ys best to clift]~~ if ye meane to geve it no twifalowe°, it ys best to  
 40 clift it about mydsomer & hent° the clifte at twifalowing° tyme so shall  
 the land be lesse burnt & ~~[the land]~~ lesse geven to weeds at sowing tyme  
 The clay & hevy land must be dry at falowing° so as it ryse & breke  
 in clodds & ~~[clunk]~~ clumpers° & the dryer so as yt will breake cleane  
 the better for then will the sunne be able to perse (pierce) it & after the  
 hevy land 45 next [~~&~~] rayne it will dissolve & multer°, but if it be falowed°  
 weat the furrowes° will rise whole & stiffe if raine come presently  
 as it happend 50 uppon it bredethe grasse & couche° & cawseth it to ryse swordly° the next  
 in ano 1596 earthe, if hott wethere folowe apon falowing° weatt it will cling  
 increase in grasse, muche rayne will not perse it to bringe it to so  
 light land 50 good temper as a dry falowe°.  
 the stonne rushe° land must be falowed° dry or betwene bothe & if  
 a dryeth° folowe it multers° to dust, yf raine, yet not so hurtfull  
 as in clay land but in all kind of land as muche as maye be avoyd  
 flaishing presently uppon which bredethe grasse & weeds, skowreth away much  
 55 of the goodnes of the land which in the newe earinge before the erthe ys  
 settled of it self lying holowe with the raine ys beate into the furrows°  
 & so is carryed awaye & lokethe as it were scalded, & so at the next  
 earth rysethe cluchye° & hard for in all kind of tillage° loke howe ye  
 leave<sup>it</sup> so shall ye fynd it  
 60 And take this for a [~~gerall~~] generall rule that althoughe the conveyent  
 tyme of tillage° be come yf the land be not dry or in good temper ye must  
 f. 58<sup>f</sup>  
 1 deferr it till it be seasonable if ye fynd not the land in temper within some  
 conveyent tyme, ye must needs proceed in your tillage° lest the saynge of soloman  
 be veryfied in you which ys, he that regardeth the wynd shall not sowe, & he that  
 hath respect to the clowds shall not reape, for tillage° may be deferred so  
 5 longe that the <sup>dryth</sup> [~~heate~~] of the somer will not suffer ye to fynishe it in any due  
 tyme so as if the land be [~~†~~] not in good temper at the first yt <sup>is very conveyent</sup> [~~may~~  
~~stay some~~]  
 to stay some resonable tyme, if it be not then in temper, better it ys to take it as yt ys  
 then in deferring tyme two take it in temper, ye overpasse the season &  
 tyme of the yere.  
 tyme for 10 Tyme for the falowing° of barly land, it is best if leasure will serve to clift  
 falowing° your clay or hevy land before wheat sowing for it it be to dry to sowe wheat  
 barly land ye cann do no better <sup>[then]</sup> & to hent° the clifte presently after wheat sowing for by  
 this means ye shalle have the cold land curried & the clifte standing so dry will  
 at the henting° fall like dust, then falowe° the hartiest barly land which ye  
 15 meane to twifalowe° so sowne after wheat sowing as may be next, the light  
 land which ye meane not to twifalowe° wold be clifted & hented° about  
 candelmas yet some do stay & then ere it altogether but the clifting<sup>ys</sup> [~~††~~] best  
 for that the furrows° taken from the clifte have the hart of the winter to multer°,  
 the clifts in the meane tyme lye drye & at henting° tyme do multer° &  
 20 cover in a manner thother furows° & the weeds that growe thereon & so ys bothe  
 in  
 the steed of a twifalowe° & better curried.  
 sowing of 20 best sowing of beans ys uppon greaten° for if the land be falowed° before they  
 beans wilbe  
 in hey field 25 prove smale & light & shorte, if the land be weate or like to bury [~~era~~] ere  
 ano 1594 shalowe & make the forows smale if toughe make the forows smale also, if dry  
 lay it as flatt as maie be & lett the greets but touch one another & after it

*frowed ij or iij days dragge them uppon the best tyme ys in the wayne of the moone but it ys resonable good any tyme after the first quarter, but the newe ys nawght the monethe of ffebruary or the begennyng of marche ys best but take heed of great weatt & cold uppon it which will make*

30 *the beanes swell & breake.*

these rules  
observed do  
cawse land  
remane longer  
in hart &  
bearethe better  
corne

*yt ys good to sowe in clay land one croppe to beans & another to wheate for besyds that beans provethe best in suche lande, & ys most proffitt, it ys almost as good as a fowld dinginge° & cawseth the wheat to rpove farr the better then it will after barly.*

35 *to sowe pese in very light land ys best the first croppe, wheat or messlyne° the second, & barly the third for the pese doth helpe to enritche the land & the often chainge of seed cawsethe the better corne.*

*yt decayethe the land & lessneth your croppe if ye sowe one land twyse together ether to wheat or to barly*

careddge of  
dunge best

40 *for [dinging] cariedg of dinge° it is best to do it in the wayne of the moone & to lay[ð] it in one greate heape in the mydest of the land & a little before sowing to disperce it in smale helps (heapes) & so torne it in with the seeds which*

*if ye [‡] carry at the comon tyme of carried & lay it in smale hepes the heat will burne it & will not be half so proffitable as the other way but for*

45 *earthe it is not a mysse to <sup>make</sup> [lay it in] two or iij heaps of a lode and so to lay it throughwt*

in the shepe  
howse pece  
ano 1596

*note that a pece of grownd apt to bred purots° was falowed° drie clifted at twifalow°*

*dry & hented° betwene bothe, some part of it sowen when the rayne had but a lytle wett it, & so did [eare] ere° light & was presently flasht uppon, this when*

50 *it came an eare did prove half purots°, the rest of the same land on bothe syds being throughlye wett with the rayne then sowen and having a senight (week) of*

*of faire wethere after did prove to be good wheate & cleane from purotes°. note annother pece of grownd being falowed° in good temper & not <sup>neding any</sup> twifalow[ð]° by*

in the gore  
pece  
in ano 1594

*by means of the dryeth° that yere, the one part being barly land & thother*

55 *sowen the croppe before to wheate, falowed° [alto<sup>ge</sup>ther] altogether, that part which*

*was before to barly after a smale raine was sowen somewhat light which proveth resonable cleane from purots°, two rudge° of <sup>that</sup> which was before to wheate being sowen*

*at the same tyme light, became altogether purots°. the rest of that which was before wheat land, was sowen after rayne when the grownd was in temper which*

60 *not withstanding had many purots° in it, And thus we fynd by experience that sowing*

f. 58<sup>v</sup>

1 *twise together to wheate ys a great breder of purots°, but being sowen also dry it torneth in a manner altogether to purots° as appered by the two rudge° before mencyoned*

wheat  
twifalow°

5 *note for a generall rule that howsoever ye dispose of or alter your tillage° whether to prevent a wett yere or a dry yere yet the alteracion of the yere may crosse your entent (according to the proverb) the husbandman knoweth not when he dothe well, for hoping to do well in twifalowing° his grownd often tymes so mucche rayne cometh that he cannot sowe it which not being twifalowed° he might have donne, & so thinking to have*

10 *curryed the weeds & made his land more mallowe (soft) & fitt to the seed  
 by means of the holownes of the erthe with muche rayne is tord to  
 myre & so ys prevented for sowing it at all, & by this ye may [~~my~~] iudge  
 of other casualties which do often hinder the husb. entent, but this ys to  
 be well consydered that he which cann take best temper for his land &  
 15 knowe when to take eche kynd of erthe in best temper observing <sup>therwith</sup> as nere  
 as may to the convenyente tyme of the yere, shall sildome faile of  
 good corne, & if his land be not in good temper at the first to stay for a better  
 yet not so long that he let passe the tyme of the yere if he be driven  
 by necessitie of the wethere & tyme to geve badd [~~twifa~~] falowe<sup>o</sup>, it <sup>is</sup> very  
 20 nedfull to watch a good tyme for to geve that land a good twifalowe<sup>o</sup>  
 which dothe much helpe the incovenyence of the other, which if bothe  
 the erthes be badd it ys great hurt to the land & becawse we [~~do~~] be not  
 [~~knowe~~] like gods to knowe what wether will folowe after, it is good always  
 of two evells to chuse the lest, as for example if after your falowe<sup>o</sup> the  
 25 tyme prove wett & cawseth it to grow with weeds & cowche<sup>o</sup>, it is better  
 to twifalowe<sup>o</sup> it ye<sup>a</sup> althoughe it be dry & likely to bred purots<sup>o</sup> then  
 (fearing a wett tyme to be bard from sowing) to turne in the weeds &  
 corne [~~tothe~~] together; & the reason ys first it is as likely to turne to  
 the best as the worst for the twifalow<sup>o</sup> killing the weeds if the sowing  
 30 prove kind it cannot chuse but be good corne, & the twifalowe<sup>o</sup> being dry  
 a wett & seasonable sowing may much helpe it [~~if it be not twifalowed~~]  
 [~~in this~~] the incovenyenc ys, if it cannot be sown by means of to muche  
 rayne, it wilbe sown to other corne which is more profitt then in torning in  
 weeds & cowch<sup>o</sup> to have the corne overcome <sup>& kept under</sup> at the springe with popy,  
 mawdren<sup>o</sup>,  
 35 & bennetts<sup>o</sup>. for it is better (according to common speech) to have a good  
 acre of barly then a sory acre of wheat, if the yere be dry & the  
 land withowt weeds yt is better not to twifalowe<sup>o</sup> [~~it in reg~~] becawse being  
 twifalowed<sup>o</sup> at a wett tyme at sowing may disapoint your sowing, & althowghe  
 it will ryse somewhat more whole then if it were twifalowd<sup>o</sup> yet if ye  
 40 go with smale furrows<sup>o</sup> being curryed with the dryth (drought) before it wilbe be  
 as kind  
 to the seed & yet this means ye may avoyd that incovenyenc that  
 a great wett may cawse as afore ys sayd. ye must also heve regard  
 to the nature of the land as to sowe could (cold) land betyms if ye may have  
 a reasonable temper, that it may take roote before the cold of winter, in light  
 45 & stonne rushe<sup>o</sup> land late els [~~the~~] eare will prove lighter *also ye must note  
 that [~~bare~~] land <sup>owt of haret</sup> must be sown rather<sup>o</sup>, for that it ys longer in taking of  
 roote  
 & so once behind still behind but land that is hartie or late dinged<sup>o</sup>  
 maye be sown later ([~~of~~] becawse yt <sup>taketh</sup> rooteth [~~fa~~] rather<sup>o</sup>, encresethe faster  
 & in shorte tyme owt groweth the other*  
 50 note these as generall rules that [~~wett~~] dry wheat sowing howe soever the yere  
 falleth  
 owt after proveth short & light but good never, wett sowing so it be not much  
 [~~must~~]  
 or presently flaisht apon nor buried it proveth good eare & seldome fayleth,  
 or never  
 late sowinge hathe somtymes this incovenyent that it ys hurt with the myndue  
 (mildew)  
 55 if it be a wett sowing go with smale furrows<sup>o</sup> set an end that the corne maye*

sowing

\*this was  
 donne in the ij

acrees under  
the bushes &  
proved good  
corne  
but <sup>brode</sup> [great]  
& deepe  
furrows<sup>o</sup>  
buried in the  
oxlease pece  
next oxlease  
1595  
f. 59<sup>r</sup>

this  
inconvenyenc  
I found in my  
pece of sixe  
acres being  
folded with  
more harr-  
shepe long  
after  
mydsomer  
1595

in inclosed  
grownd a  
fating to the  
land

note for  
sowing

differenc in  
the nature of  
the yere

barly sowing

passee owt betwene\* or if the [land]<sup>Rudge<sup>o</sup></sup> need not be laye very hye ere the  
furrows<sup>o</sup>  
shalowe that the corne maie sowne passee thoroughe.

*Thwarting<sup>o</sup> the land at twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in cowchy<sup>o</sup> grownd dothe mucche good  
& lest labor, as it appered in the owtsyd of the pece next cholclose 1595*

- 1 *in falowing<sup>o</sup> it ys not good for the avoyding of one inconvenyence to fall into a  
worse  
as if ye [~~eover~~] covet to have a pece of grownde to be [---] fowlded  
over & so stay longe in the yere to the entent to have the dinge<sup>o</sup> tornd in with the  
falowe<sup>o</sup> if the land be deepe cowchy<sup>o</sup> or cold it ys a great inconvenyete for if*
- 5 *the yere be moist the dinge<sup>o</sup> bredeth a stronge sword<sup>o</sup> on the grownd, & then  
beinge  
late falowed<sup>o</sup> it wilbe always <sup>be</sup> cowchy<sup>o</sup> and come to no kynd tyllage. therefore it  
ys best to ere such land betyms for all the fowld, & let the fowld go till the <sup>sheepe</sup>  
be shoren on the greeten land viz: suche light lande as ys not kynd to be falowd<sup>o</sup>  
till it be late in the yere & then when they are shoren they may be fowlded*
- 10 *on such deepe land after the falowe<sup>o</sup>, & be turnd in with the twifalowe<sup>o</sup>, or  
after twifalowe<sup>o</sup> & be tornd in with the seeds.*
- [note also that] note also that in a tilled<sup>o</sup> grownd that ys severall, it ys better to let the  
weeds  
growe to some bigg<sup>n</sup>es then to turne them in short & grene for when they be tornd  
in  
shorte they will shott uppe grene betwene the furrowes<sup>o</sup> & take Roote downward
- 15 *but when they be tornd in longe they will sone rotte and dye & be as good  
as a ding<sup>o</sup> to the land.  
note that generally rathe<sup>o</sup> sowing commeth upp better then late sowing &  
therefore  
ye must sowe more seeds towards the later end then the beginnyng*
- 20 *note that in ano 1596 the winter being wett, marche & Aprill faire, may & half  
of Iune very wett, & from thenc till St Jams tyde lippinge (rainy) wethere all  
light land  
that was sowen dry proved very badd, & in hevye land it torned to purots<sup>o</sup>, yet in  
Bittons filed clay land dry sowen proved well so I thinke that in hevye land not apt  
to breed p<sup>u</sup>rots<sup>o</sup> though sowing be dry it proveth well as it appered in the further  
syde  
of my pece beinge sowen light ano 1595, & the further syde of the gore peece ano  
1594*
- 25 *yet some yeres do greatly <sup>differ</sup> from common experyence as ano 1596 for wheras  
wheate proved commonly best in light land the yere being wett it then proved  
worst. & wheras late sowen barly in a wett or seasonable <sup>yere</sup> proved best this yere  
it proved worst, for the wheate. I cann showe no reason but for the barly  
I iudge the rather<sup>o</sup> sowing proved best, because it was well roted before the  
excesse of raine came, & the late sowen attaine with contynuall wett when  
it was yet tender, & not well rooted & the deper & coulder the land was the  
worse it proved, so I conclud that it ys best to sowe deepe land betyms if it be dry  
& light land later, for then if the sommer be wett, the deepe land wilbe better  
rooted, & the light land better abyde the wett, but in all lands sowe drye*
- 30

- 35 if ye maye, for howsoever the yere falleth owt the temper of the land makethe  
muche to the goodnes of the corne.  
in clay land the wheat ys bredd to a hardd stonne & dothe always abyde the force  
of the wynd \* but suche land ys a cheshye & skowringe sand, suche as ys the  
sheephowse peece, & the owt syde of the gore peece, which semeth to have some  
gravell
- 40 in it, bredethe a long bowshe reede, but the stemme ys holowe, & weake & ys  
beaten downe with every wynd, & ys subiect to every storme & therfore ys in  
great  
hazard to be spoyled as it appered in the sheepehowse peece 1596. besyds suche  
kynd  
of land ys always subiect to purots<sup>o</sup>, & popy, & in a wett yere full of mawdren<sup>o</sup>.  
all sandy land sowen to barly in a wett yere ys muche subiect to weeds as it  
45 appered in the reddfield & divers other plac (places) in ano 1596.  
note that in such land as at wheat sowing ys ered tought a furrow<sup>o</sup> that ys the first  
furrowe<sup>o</sup> layd uppe an end against [~~the~~] the syde of the rudge<sup>o</sup> & the other  
furrows<sup>o</sup> [~~furrows~~]  
ered very smale & layd close upp an end to make the rudge<sup>o</sup> highe & rownd, ys  
an occasion that suche rudge<sup>o</sup> as are somewhat <sup>great</sup> as above five or sixe furrows<sup>o</sup>  
do more
- 50 spedely shott of the sodane (sudden) fall of the rayne & commeth upp more  
intently by means  
the wheat issueth betwene the smale furrows<sup>o</sup> so set an end, but this  
inconvenyenc  
commethe therof that the land so tilled<sup>o</sup> [~~bringeth~~] bredethe not so stockky a  
blade nor <sup>is</sup> so good in yelding in so muche that some land in corstons filde  
beinge  
layd flatt (but it was stonnrushe<sup>o</sup> land suche as could not take hurt by the  
55 resydenc of raine water) I demanded whie it was so layd, & the husbandman  
there suche as had make long experience of it make answeere that some would  
take  
them to be badd husbands seing <sup>it</sup> lay not in rownd & handsome rudge<sup>o</sup>, as it was  
in  
other plac & as they them selves used in ther deepe <sup>land</sup> but say they if we should  
geve it  
thother tillage<sup>o</sup> it would neither yeld so stokky corne nor so good burden & added  
this reason
- 60 that the rudge<sup>o</sup> lyinge hie in that field when the frost had curried it but specially  
the  
marche wynds, the erthe wold be so light & dusty that every hight wynd would  
beate  
it of those highe rudge<sup>o</sup> [~~yea~~] into the furrows<sup>o</sup>, yea it would be ready to mutler of  
it  
self from the toppe of the rudge<sup>o</sup>, & fall into the furrowe<sup>o</sup>, & so leave the corne  
half  
bare & uncoverd. But I cann synce by my owne experyenc showe a second  
65 reason & that is this, the wheat, (but especially the graybald) provethe best
- 1 best when the mowld<sup>o</sup> lyethe heaviest on it, as experyence teatcheth. as for  
example the hevyst clay land, bredethe the waighiest (heaviest) toppe \* if the  
land  
(what kind of mowld<sup>o</sup> soever it be) be dry or light at sowing, the corne proveth

clay land best  
wheat  
\*chish sand  
& gravell ile  
for wheate

sandy land  
breder of  
weeds  
diversitie in  
the tillage<sup>o</sup> and  
laying of land

f. 59<sup>v</sup>

\*[proveth]

proved in ano  
1596 et  
semper

this tillage<sup>o</sup> W.  
Bushe doth  
use which com  
upp faire &  
lyeth cleane  
yet proveth  
not so good as  
others as  
experience  
hathe taught,  
for the flatt  
Rudge<sup>o</sup> so  
they be smale.  
I fynde expe-  
ryenc in  
Corstons field  
as also in the ij  
acres above  
the mill in ano  
1595

light

the hevier the land is (so it be not so wett to bury) the waightier will the topp  
5 be, by this I gather this reason\* that such land as ys layd by upp tought  
a furrowe<sup>o</sup> in suche sort as I have before set downe, dothe not ly so hevy uppon  
the seed as the other that is layd flatt & the cawse<sup>is</sup> that in the first it only  
issueth the owt betwene the furrows<sup>o</sup>, in the other it commeth fourth throughe  
the furrows<sup>o</sup>, provided always that the furrows<sup>o</sup> in the flatt rudge<sup>o</sup> be not ered to  
10 deepe or thicke but rather somewhat thine, for feare of buryinge the seede, for  
the corne must issue throughe them, in the first the seed clinging to the  
furrowe<sup>o</sup> before he ys [~~tornd~~] tornd ech furrow<sup>o</sup> being set upp so tought an end  
& taken so smale as before I have described the furrow<sup>o</sup> set one an end dothe  
settle uppon his end & do but lightly leane to his felowe, & the seed clinging to  
15 the insyde of eche furrowe<sup>o</sup> slippeth uppe betwene bothe furrows<sup>o</sup>, in the [~~the~~]  
other the furrowe<sup>o</sup> being somewhat more brode & lyinge flatt on the seed, it ys  
constrayned to make away throughe; to prove that the [~~flatt~~]<sup>flatt</sup> rudge<sup>o</sup> lyethe  
hevier then thother I make this comparison if ye take any burthene (burden) &  
lay it on your backe, it will lye hevier then if you should take the same  
20 burden, & resting the one end on the grownd should let it but onely leane  
against you or settinge a trencher on your hand will seme more weightie  
then setting him on[e] then ye suffer him to leane aggeinst your hand because  
the greatest waight resteth on the lower end, so<sup>as</sup> if ye graunt this  
undowbted principle that, the hevier the wheat is layd, [~~the~~] (so it be not  
25 buried) the better it provethe. I hope you cannot deny this last reason,  
if bothe be alowed then needes must the flatter rudge<sup>o</sup> prove the better  
corne for those reasons before rehearsed, but some will say, if this be  
true, then, in shunning of one evile we shall fall into a wourse, for if  
the rudge<sup>o</sup> be layd fatt in some land, it will so lye so sugging in water  
30 if raine come presently uppon sowinge that the corne will swell & break  
or if it do come upp, a wett winter will not suffer it to prosper. I answer  
that this tillage<sup>o</sup> which I shall nowe set downe will bothe contynue  
the good use of the one & yet avoyd this inconvenyenc which ye have nowe  
alledged, & that ys this, ye shall make all your rudge<sup>o</sup> foure furrows<sup>o</sup>  
35 a rudge<sup>o</sup> so [~~may~~] shall the rudge<sup>o</sup> lye resonable rownde [~~though~~] thoughte  
ye lay the furrowes<sup>o</sup> somewhat flat[e], the inconvenyen ye [~~ye~~] spake of  
is avoyded in this, that the rudge<sup>o</sup> being so smale the water cann have  
no resydenc on him, & the furrows<sup>o</sup> so many that the water may then  
faster pass[ag] away, but if it be in a flatt wher the water cann have  
40 no passage [~~the it is~~] but must needs lye in the furrows<sup>o</sup>, then ys it  
best to laye it a midrudge eight furrowes<sup>o</sup> to the rudge<sup>o</sup>, so shall it lye  
hye & rownde, but if muche resydenc of water be, then make the rudge<sup>o</sup>  
twelv furrows<sup>o</sup> & go amydrudge at twifallowe<sup>o</sup> as well as at sowinge  
to lay it very hye, for it is better to drowne the bottome of the rudge<sup>o</sup>  
45 then the [~~ho~~] whole, but touchinge the smale rudge<sup>o</sup> (where water  
may have convenyent passage) experience teachethe howe well  
corne commethe upp & provethe in them besyds ye shall fynd this  
furthere commoditie in them, that if store of raine come at sowinge  
they wilbe soner dry to be sowen then brode rudge<sup>o</sup> where raine maye  
50 have resydence.

diversitie in  
the nature and  
kinds of  
wheate

Note that wheras the graybald wheate provethe best to be layd hevie, as  
in clay land & underfurrowe<sup>o</sup>: the [~~redd wheat~~] redd wheate proveth  
better being layd light, as we see at Wellowe & combheye where  
they sowe most redd wheate & dragge it in. the<sup>like</sup> do they at Cosham

55 where they onely dragge it in & they say if it be sowen there under  
 furrowe° it will not prove so well, this deceived some in Corston who  
 thinkinge some of there land muche like in nature to Combheys did,  
 dragge in graybald & it proved ile which if it had benn redd wheate it  
 might happe to have proved well, so I conclud that regard must be  
 60 had as well to the nature of the seede as of the [the] land, & kynd of tillage°.

f. 60<sup>r</sup>

example for  
 the bettring of  
 the [gr] land  
 with salte

1 Wheras before I have set downe Mr Platts opyneon together with my own  
 coniecture, touthinge the nature of salt in the fattinge of the grownd  
 I have synce learned (by one: hombeame of Corston who told me he [say]-sawe  
 it donne) that a husbandman in devonshire procured certaine refuse  
 5 salt which was good for no other purpose (for it served before for the saltinge  
 of pillchare (pilch)) & [sow] bestowd it on a pece of grownd in suche thicknes as  
 ye might well perceave the grownd somewhate<sup>white</sup> with it in the manner  
 of a haile shewre (shower), & so erd it in [in] with the seed, which proved at  
 harvest to

be passing good corne, [toughinge] farther havinge conferenc abowte the  
 10 frutfullnes of the sea sand in bettringe of grownd, he affirmed that he  
 [see] did see the order sowe they did bestowe it on their land, which was thus  
 they did fetch it in sacks on horses & while some where caryed to the land  
 other were filled up on the shore; they could not carry above v pecks on a horse  
 it was so hevvy, the color of it was somewhate [wha] white, it was  
 15 somwhat moist & wold clinge together much like to axen (ashes) in a bucking  
 when

the water is drayned from it, they wold folowe the water at ebbing tyme  
 very lowe & take upp suche as the water had but then left behind, for that  
 they sayd was best, & suche as had [~~layd layd~~] lyen dry being cast upp with some  
 hye tyde & all the oze was unprofitable when they had brought it to the land  
 20 they layd it in smale heaps & with their cornishe spads (spades) made like  
 trewells

example of  
 steeping corne  
 to better it

they wold cast it thinne abrode which did breed very good corne.  
 note also that touching the watringe of corne [dinge] in dinge° & water, or rather  
 ding° & bryne mixte together to be presently sowen as before is declared  
 one C. Weeke tould me he sawe this experyence of it at Langredge one  
 25 who had seen theexperyenc in some other place toke upp suche water as had  
 lyen soking in the bottome of a dung heape some long tyme before which semed  
 of

the color of mault water & putting barly in all night did sowe it the next  
 mornynge, & it proved very good corne. this is the more probable because  
 it was such water where the chiefe residenc of ding° laye or the most substance  
 30 of vegitable salt, (as Mr Plate termethe it) but if the botome had benne  
 muche stirred & so taken upp thick, or salt mixt with it I think it had benne  
 stronger.

howe to make  
 dunge of a  
 stronge  
 substanc to  
 better the land

By this & that before written I gather that a good husband [H] by taking some  
 pains & some smale chardge withall might enritche his land very muche  
 35 in suche sorte as folowethe first let him procure at Lent (for then ys it  
 best & cheapest to be donne) some quarter or more of suche refuse salt as is  
 left of suche hearinges as are sold at retaile; of which there is always left some  
 store in the bottome of the barrells then must there be reserved [some] heape  
 of rotten dunge to the value of xx<sup>tie</sup> lodes which being removed some smale space  
 40 to make rome for a newe dunge heape provide before that the place whether  
 this dunge is to be removed may be made somewhat holowe to reteine moysture

then beginne the heape either rownd or square & first first lay a laine of dunge  
 in such sort that the middle may always be holowe then strew salt at your  
 discretion, then make another laine of dunge & strewe more salt [~~till all~~  
 45 be ~~upp~~] & so lay the rest, till all be uppe haveing regard always that the  
 toppe be holowe in the myddest to receave suche water as falleth or as may  
 be throwne on it if the wether prove to dry, & let suche bryne as is to be  
 throwng away or as may be gotten be always powred on the topp of this  
 heape, this doanne <sup>a little</sup> [~~what~~] before the tyme of sowinge [~~be~~] remove this great  
 50 heape [~~into seaven~~] or owt of the pitt as cleane as may be and place it by,  
 on plaine [~~p~~] grownd in vij or viij smale heapes as hy (high) & copped as you  
 may,  
 to dry it. then at sowing tyme either lay it on the land in smale heapes  
 [~~or el~~] & so disperse it thinne abrode with a cornishe spade, which is fittest for  
 this purpose, or els take it owt of the dung pott & sowe it with the seedlippe<sup>o</sup>  
 55 as they do pygeon dinge<sup>o</sup> & so turned it in with the seed. this hathe great  
 possibility  
 to be as stronge or stronger in substance then pygeons dinge<sup>o</sup> for the salt being  
 very hott & fatt of his owne nature when it shall become vegetable by  
 incorporating it with the dunge with <sup>which</sup> heat & moisture workethe together  
 in such sort it must [~~much~~] needs cause the whole substance to be stronger

f. 60<sup>v</sup>

1 effectuall to this purpose & to prove that pygeons dinge<sup>o</sup> is much of the quality  
 or this composition, & this compownded dunge much like in nature to pegeons  
 dunge, I note these reasons; first the pigeon is hott of nature he  
 desireth above all things to eate the salt peter & suche things as peter is  
 5 engendred in so as salt peter is <sup>forged</sup> [~~engendered~~] in no place <sup>in so great quantitie</sup> as it is  
 in the

botome of dovehouses. The hole where the dunge heape laye reteyninge  
 suche water <sup>in</sup> it as fallethe therin, ys exellent good for steepinge of corne to  
 sowe in suche sort as is above declared.

dunging of  
land with  
Lyme

it <sup>is</sup> proved by experyenc that Lyme is a fatter of the land, which being slaked  
 (diluted)

10 & mixt in the like quantitie with good earth, dothe [~~much~~] greatly better  
 any could land the quantitie is xvj lods to the dinging<sup>o</sup> of an acre [~~but of~~]  
 which as Mr Platt affirmith will make showe in the grownd vij yers after. it hath  
 farther this propertie that if it be layd on a stiffe clay (for in such kynd  
 of grownd it is most proffitable) by means of the great heate & drythe  
 15 that it hathe, it will cawse the stiffe grownd to become holowe, & worke  
 very mallowe in respect of that it did before to the greater increase  
 of such corne as is sowen in it. This <sup>is</sup> proved by experyenc in sondry plac  
 & much used in walls.

inconvenyenc  
of dry beane  
sowinge

if ye sowe beane the land being dry & especially if lytle raine folowe  
 20 the beane will rune under the furrowe<sup>o</sup> (for comonly the furrows<sup>o</sup> of beane  
 land do rise whole being greten<sup>o</sup>) till the toppe be attaint & so wither  
 therefore ye must dragge them as <sup>sowne as</sup> yt will [~~will~~] worke & if it be so dry  
 that ye cannot throughly dragge them at first \* the next raine ye

\* I. willcoxe  
proved this <sup>in</sup> a  
land above  
coomeway  
& was the best  
beans 1597  
twise dragging

25 shall dragge them again yea althoughe they appeare above the grownd  
 for althoughe yt do breake a fewe chissomes yet it will let up twice  
 as many & some say many of these chissomes being broke in twaine (half) will  
 tak roote & beare two stalks & in some contrys they do never dragg  
 their beanes till many of them appeare above the grownd \* therefore I  
 would have beane land considering it is stiffe & a clay comonly where



- ys best  
especially  
where the  
furrow<sup>o</sup> ys  
thick & brode  
\*the best kind  
of ering for  
beane Land
- 30 they are sowen, to be ered very shalowe so it be ered cleane, & the furrows  
but smale; that either they may easily passe thorough or find a way owt  
betwene the furrowes<sup>o</sup>, for if it be wett yet shall bury the lesse & if a dryeth<sup>o</sup>  
folowe & clynge the furrows<sup>o</sup> yet they shall have an easier passage then when  
the furrow<sup>o</sup> is thick & brode, if they be sowen drye lesse raine will wett  
35 them.
- howsing of  
beans best
- In the howsing of beans ye must take good heed that they be thorough  
dry for they will seeme dry in a hott day yet after will a yewe  
& being so howsd will foyst (mould) burne in the mowe<sup>o</sup> & rott as ones did  
1596 therefore they must stand long & wither throughly & must neither  
40 be howsd shortly uppon a raine nor in a myste
- the cawse  
of breeding  
charlocke<sup>o</sup>  
in barly  
\*this I proved  
in in pece  
1597 which  
not  
withstanding  
the dry sowing  
had no  
charlocke<sup>o</sup>
- note if a winter be very wett so as the land at falowe<sup>o</sup> ryse lyvery (sodden)  
if the springe prove dry & barly sowen in dust [†] & especially dry wether  
folowing, it will breed many charlocke<sup>o</sup> as it did ano 1597 therfore they  
that sowl very rath<sup>o</sup> had little els save charlocke<sup>o</sup> the land being then more  
45 apt to breed that weed by means of colenes of the tyme when it was drye,  
& starke by means of the wett before & not dry & mallowe which must come  
by heat of the sunne therfore it is best to sowe later in clay, after such a wynter  
& in all such land as ys known & apt to bred charlocke<sup>o</sup> when it ys <sup>to</sup> wheate,  
\*there ys mucche helpe in twifalowing<sup>o</sup> deepe which dothe bothe kill this & and  
50 other weeds also, being turnd in deepe from the sonne & ayre which would breed  
& nurrish them.
- obiecton  
& answeere
- some will say it is good to take up such cold land betyms whils it ys dry lest  
much wett come & marr all. I answeere if <sup>it</sup> were so wett <sup>a winter</sup> ye need not  
much to feare a wett sowing, yet it is better to advenyer it, then to have  
55 the land beare litle [sav] save charlocke<sup>o</sup>.
- wheate  
sowinge
- at wheat sowing if the land ryse light betwene wett & drye as it doth comonly  
when at a smale raine commeth after a dryth not able throughly to wett it, yt doth  
breede a smale ere & light as it hapned in part of the ij acres by my  
pece 1597 therfore either when it ys throwghe wett, or being over wett dothe  
60 beginne to dry againe is kindest <sup>for</sup> [of] the seed.
- hevy erthe  
good dinge<sup>o</sup> in  
light land
- a clay or hevy earth suche as ys in pounds or pools when the water ys  
dryed away; is very good <sup>in</sup> light or stonnrush<sup>o</sup> land & doth breed faire wheat  
as it apered in heyfield 1596 next the woods.
- f. 61<sup>r</sup>  
note for dunge
- 1 old dunge & rotten is best for come grownd to be carryed owt in the waine  
of the moone for being layd on the land in the new moone bredeth weeds  
dunge layd on the land being weet is hurtfull therfore if ye must  
needs carry it wett, lay it in a great heape to be dispersed when it  
5 is drye.
- if ye dunge wheat land ye must either lay it on the land in May  
or the beginning of Iune to be turnd in with falowe<sup>o</sup>, or lay it in a  
great heape to be caried into smale heapes & turnd in with the seede  
for if it lye in smale heaps the heat of the sunne will drye  
10 away the cheesest substance of the dunge.
- some desire to lay it the first yere on barly land for then will it  
be throwlye mixte with the soyle & fully malowed against the next  
wheat crope but then it must be layd on at suche tyme that it  
may be torned in presently lest the heate of the sunne exhaust the  
15 goodnes therof.
- for pasture
- To make cold pasture or wett, good in the winter, & to spring all the

the rather<sup>o</sup> in the spring tyme; [~~ye shall~~] ye shall make geines in suche  
 place as may convey the water either into some ditch or trench lying  
 in the Lowest parte therof & the best tyme to do it ys abowt michaelmas  
 20 or in if the tyme be dry for then comonly the springe being dried  
 up with the heate of sommer going before; it shalbe cleanly to work  
 & the grownd firme, wherby it will not sugge in & fill or close the  
 trench<sup>e</sup> & when the great wett of winter comethe, it will pass [~~one~~]  
 away speedely by those trenches, so as ye have a regard to the curi<sup>ant</sup>  
 25 to convey it to the lowest place, so as no raine can stand to increase  
 the sugge, the grownd while it is firme, being prepared with trenches doth  
 keepe it allways drye; & the reason ys for that the [~~moyst~~] excesse of  
 moysture keping it cold in the winter & also in the springe till the very  
 heate of the sommer, the grasse cannot springe, & then also if the dryeth<sup>o</sup>  
 30 commeth sodainely, it is likly to clynge which is a great inconvenienc,  
 except suche remedies be provyded, the second best tyme ys in marche  
 but then the sodaine drayning of the water with the dryth uppon, may  
 cawse the grownd to clinge.  
 in march the water is fatt for it leaveth a certeine slyme & fatnes being it,  
 35 to falow<sup>o</sup> wheat land cleane, if the yere be weat not to rathe<sup>o</sup>  
 to twifalowe<sup>o</sup> it [~~it~~] in good temper if it may be for dry twifalowe<sup>o</sup> breedeth  
 weeds & purotes<sup>o</sup>, to twifalow<sup>o</sup> a sennight before St James tyde if the wether  
 be not to wett for this commoditie commeth of rath<sup>o</sup> twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in temper  
 it will be moyst under, be setled closer together, & if litle raine come at  
 40 sowing, yet it will ryse kynder, & lye hevier on the seed then the late  
 twifalowe<sup>o</sup> which faleth more light & mallow if great raine come it shall  
 better beare it then late twifalowe<sup>o</sup> shall, which lying holowe will soner be  
 pered, & torned to myer; it shall contynew moyst longer if a dryeth<sup>o</sup> come  
 after the raine for as it is soner perced so with raine so is it sone drye  
 45 by means of the holownes, but if moysture contynue it contyneweth  
 still a myer.  
 it often happeneth that a pece of tillage<sup>o</sup> is farr bigger at thone (the one) end then  
 at thother wherby the rudge<sup>o</sup> do differ at the ends in biggnes so as some  
 desirous for the quicke dispatch to fynishe <sup>the worke do make</sup> the like & self same  
 furrows<sup>o</sup>  
 50 through owt; [~~do~~] <sup>which</sup> cawseth the broder end to lye flatt & sometymys with the  
 brode  
 furrows<sup>o</sup> do bury; the remedy is, to make often toringe & more furrowes<sup>o</sup>  
 at the broder end of the Rudg<sup>o</sup>, then at the other: but better it were, when  
 the ends of rudgs<sup>o</sup> are very brode, to make Rutts, so shall ye bothe avoyd  
 the burying of the corne, & cawse thends of the rudge<sup>o</sup>, being so devyded, to  
 55 to lye rownd & free from hurt by over mucche moysture.

f. 61<sup>v</sup>

wheat sowing

1 at sowing to make the Rudg<sup>o</sup> lye rownd ere the first furrowe<sup>o</sup> tought, & *let*  
*the greets ioyne close the next furrowes<sup>o</sup> & the henting<sup>o</sup> furrowes also*  
*must be smale*, for if (in deepe land) you make any one furrowe<sup>o</sup> to  
 bigge the corne will bury the more & the Rudge<sup>o</sup> lye the flatter &  
 5 especially in some place men beinge desirous to shift up their worke  
 with more hast then good speed do erre their hentings<sup>o</sup> at two full furrows<sup>o</sup>  
 which would well make three & so bury much of the syde of the rudge<sup>o</sup>  
 but in stone rushe<sup>o</sup> lande [~~if the fo or nere the rock~~] if the furrowes<sup>o</sup>  
 be some what broder & not to thick it can do litle hurt specially in land  
 10 nere the rocks if the [~~furrows~~] Rudgs<sup>o</sup> lye somewhat flatt, it is the better

for then lyeth more moist, & lesse wast to the land by the heate of the sunne.

differenc  
betwixt  
sowing a  
furrowe° & a  
myddrudge

sowing of wheat a furrowe I take it to be best, in these sorts of lands viz: in all stonerushe° & light land, & in all hevye land that will not  
15 lye longe wette, & in such<sup>as</sup> lye shoting up & downe the hill, because no wett can have longe resydenc there; & one [~~my~~] reason ys for that suche wheat sowen a [~~fur~~] furrowe° hath comonly good toppe, in all places of the Rudge°; & the cawse ys for that the first two greet furrows°, that  
20 maketh the topp of the rudge° ioyning together in the furrowe° do cawse the wheat under them to lye deepe & to breed the better [~~me~~] roote, the henting° furows do fall in mydest of the rudge°, which yeldeth good store of earth for norishinge the corne [~~en~~] on thother syde, such as is sowen a myddrudge the first [~~tw~~] greet furrows°, falling owt one the topp of the Rudge°, cannot lye so hevye to breed the corne, as it appereth by  
25 the corne which commeth up farr soner, then<sup>in</sup> the toppe of such rudge° as are sowen a furrowe°, the henting° furrowes which happen againe in the henting° doth yeld no such plenty of mallowe earthe as in the other, but goeth so deepe that often tymes it<sup>bringeth</sup> up a dead mould°, which cawseth in<sup>the</sup> land sowen a myddrudge, much light toppe, & under wheate. an  
30 other reason ys that in middrudg the henting° furrows being set from the botome will ryse whole & flakie [~~but~~] & will bury much corne if great labor be not taken to [~~bury~~] peck the clodds, but in thother the henting° furrows will ryse more malowe for the btter breeding of the corne.

land best to be  
sowen a  
myddrudge

35 suche land ys best to be sowen a myddrudg viz all suche deepe & cold land, as do lye in a flatt place, where water hath long resydenc, such as will contynue longe wett, such as do lye at the foote of some hill & is overflowen with a sodaine raine & also suche land as hath winter springe in them or gawlie (thick) such the husbands do comonly call spewing  
40 Land; in all such land it is best earing a myddrudge to lay the land hye; for ye may go a mydrudg both at twifalowe° & at<sup>if the land be not stony,</sup> sowinge, for the [~~hier~~]

lay cold land  
dry & light  
land fatt to  
receave  
moysture

higher it lyeth the dryer [~~& in~~] as on the contrary in light<sup>Land</sup> & nighe the Rock the flatter the more moist, so as eche thing that exceedeth in the extremis either to hott or to cold, to dry, or to moyst, the nerer by our diligenc  
45 we bring it to a temper or meane, the nerer wee bring it to perfeccion.

\*this hapnd in  
my pece by  
home mead  
1599

\*later in the  
spring best to  
avoyd purotes°

such land as ys apt to breed purotes°, if it be sowen dry, do bring forth great store \* if after the first raine, before it be throwly sokned (soaked) albeit it seemeth  
50 resonable good woorke,<sup>y<sup>e</sup>t</sup> if it be light it breedeth store of purotes° also especially rathe° in the yere therof sowe not in such land before it be throwe wett, or being oversoked in wett beginne to drye againe \* & farr better it is

to sowe some in the latter end of the yere, in good temper, then to stand to the hazard of<sup>so</sup> a great inconvenyenc.

f. 62<sup>r</sup>

1 To cawse pulse° to growe greater then ordinary virgil willeth first to steepe them in salt peter powdred as also in the mother or scumme of oyles which he calleth *amurca*, it is therfore likely that it should cawse other graine to fructifie also & it well agreeth with [~~with~~] Mr Platts discorse touchinge the  
5 nature of salt wherin he supposeth salt peter to be of a farr stronger substanc then common salt, therefore it addeth [~~geveh~~] the more credit to Mr

- Platts philosophie<sup>for</sup> that so annoient an autor should iumpe with him in the like opyneon
- rules at wheat sowing 10 three things especially to be consydered at wheat sowing, first that the land be in temper if it may be as weatt, as it wilbe sowen without burying in all kynds of land, secondly that the furrows<sup>o</sup> be smale, not over deepe eared, & handsomely layd together. thirdlie that [~~the~~] it be not to thicke sowen, but with a suent (steady) hand; proporcionable, according to the goodness of the land, moore quantitie
- this I tried in th headland of longhill pece 1599 15 in the later end, then in the beginnyng of sowing, \* & especially if it may be avoyd great furrows<sup>o</sup> thowghe it be for expedicion sake\* & sowing in the rain, for it buryeth by quaffing the earthe together & bredeth popy, mawdren<sup>o</sup> & all sorts of weeds, yet more tolerable at the beginnyng then later end of sowing.
- barly sowing 20 in sowing barly consyder these things that the land be eared suently in all place broke a like, the farrows not to bigg nor to deepe; not to thicke seeded, for that bredeth a smale weak eare, nor to often harowed in on (one) place, for that bringeth most of the corne into the furrows<sup>o</sup>, but only sufficient to hide the seed, & breake the furrows<sup>o</sup> in all place a like.
- to steepe wheate in 25 take suche water as hath benn long resident in the bottome of a dungeheape mixt<sup>it</sup> with salt, & a litle rotten dunge, & stirr it often [~~then~~] the best is pigeon dunge, then put the wheat in it all night or longer & stirr it well at the first putting in, take it forth in the morning, & make some bay salt into powlder & pigeon dunge dryed mixe it with lyme & [~~put~~] put the steeped wheat into it, & stirring it together it will clynge to the wheat, & so sowe it 30 or els weat the wheat in oyle & then mixe it with this composicion or with salt peter onely, made into powler, as virigil teatcheth.
- beanes 1602 note in sowing of beanes that it be shalow, ered with smale furrowes<sup>o</sup> & in any wise dragge it, presently uppon sowing althoughe [~~in~~] it be toughe & not so kynd as you would have it for we fynd it by experience that in deferring 35 the draging, the dryth hath oft tymes so clunge the furrowes<sup>o</sup> that the beanes could never come up, if the wether do prove so seasonable afterward the draging presently uppon sowing to prevent the worste; will not hider it, but that in convenyent tyme it may very well be dragged againe.
- barly sowing 40 sowing of barly dry, if the may be wett breddeth mawdren<sup>o</sup> therefore meane betweene wett & dry is best temper for barly, flashing also uppon sowing (especially in sand) breedeth mawdren<sup>o</sup>, also in all sandy land a wett may bredeth many weeds & the best way to [~~pre~~] prevent it ys to sowe it every second croppe to pese which kylleth the weeds, & harketh the land.
- my corne close at corston 1602 wheate sowing 45 no kynd of wheat land likethe dry sowing, but the brechy (brackish) land (which ys alway moist at the sherepoint) or blewe clay, so it be not such as is apt to breed puotes<sup>o</sup> note at weeding tyme if you happen to fynd popy in the furrowes<sup>o</sup> weed it owt cleane; althoughe it seeme but smale for we fynd by experience that if the yere prove lipping such popy as is but smale at mydsomer will wryde (grow, spread) into such great branches that it will eate & consume the wheat mightely by harvest tyme
- f. 62<sup>v</sup> wheat sowing 1 sowing of wheate in deepe land if ye sowe amyddrudge to make the wocke lye hye comonly the henting<sup>o</sup> furrowes will ryse so whole that it will

- hasard to bury the wheat, wherfore to prevent it ye must <sup>go</sup> a forowe & in layd the first forowe tought & laying the rest in smale furrows° & close  
 5 you shall <sup>have</sup> it lie as rownd as the mydrudge onely by making the more smale furrows° as the mydrudg hathe & if the temper be light it will not heale the seed so well as sowing a furrowe°.
- wheat sowing note if the land torne light so it runne not, ere somewhat deep fu<sup>r</sup>rowe° so laie it heavie. for it ye go <sup>with</sup> in smale furrows° it will lye to light  
 10 & prove worse toward the hoke°. at sowing it is much different in the sallow for if he be to brod at the taile he will laie the forrow° to [browe] flat is ye take him brode yf ye ere a smale forrow° he will torne one uppon annother.
- f. 104<sup>v</sup> 1 Rules of husbandry partly practysed by <sup>my</sup>self partly taken owt of other authores in anno 1596
- Virgil  
 falowing° for  
 clay land Tyme of falowing° for wheate  
 5 *That grownd that hath the forc of two sommers & two winters answereth the gredy desire of the husbandman as to fallowe° clay land at twelvyde or candlem<sup>a</sup>s & to sowe it at michaelmas hath part of that winter the next sommer, all the next winter, & all the sommer folowing before it commethe to the hooke°, And so may be sayd to have the tillage° of ij winters, & ij sommers.*
- for deepe &  
 good land *if the land be could or very frutfull beginne to fallowe° in the first monethes,*  
 10 *so shall the moultring cloddes dissolve with the sowthwynds & dustye sommer season the scattered clodds with pleas<sup>a</sup>unt sunnshinyng & destroyeth the weeds.*
- for light &  
 barren land *yf the grownd be light or sandye it shall suffice to ere it wih a shalowe furrowe° under the signe Arcturus which ys abowt the dogge dayes lest smale sappe & frutfull moysture that ys in it, be drawen up & wasted, by the fervent heate*  
 15 *of the sunne*
- for hevy land  
 \*for light land *it ys best to ere hevy land betymes in the yere that the heate of the sommer maye multer° & dissolve the clodds \* in light land abowt mydsomer or after that the longe heate drye not the substance therof overmuche.*
- clyfting of  
 wheat land  
 good 20 *but in light land such as ys unapt to bredd weeds, if ye meane to geve it no twifallowe°, it ys best to clifte it abowt mydsommer & hent° it abowt twifalowing° tyme, so shall the land be lesse burnt, & lesse gevin to weeds at sowinge tyme.*
- inconvenience  
 of untymely  
 falowinge° *In falowing° it ys not good for the avoydinge of one inconvenyenc to fall into a worse,*  
*as if ye covet to have a pece of grownd overrunne with the fould & so stay long in the*
- this I did  
 practise on my  
 pece of vj  
 acres being  
 folded [---] in  
 ano 1595 25 *yere, to thentent to have the dunge tornd in with the falowe° if the land be deepe, couchye°, or cold, yt breedeth a great inconvenyenc for if the yere be moyst the dunge breedeth a stronge sorde° on the grownd, & then being late falowed° it will always grassye & come to no kynd tillage° therefore it ys best to ere such land betyms for all the fould, & let the fould go till the sheepe be shoren on gretten° land [≠] viz: such light land as ys not kind to be falowed°*  
 30 *till it be late in the yere. & when they are shoren they maye be fouled on such deepe land uppon the fallow°, & be tornd in with the twifalowe°, or after twifalowe° & beturnd in with the seede.*
- temper for  
 clay & deepe  
 land 35 *The tyme or season at falowinge°*  
*The clay & hevy land must be drye at falowinge° so as it ryse & breake in clodds & clumpers & the drer so as it will ere & breake cleane the better*
- \*inconven-

- yenc of a weatt falowe°
- this happened in rathe° fallowe° in ano 1596 temper for stonn rushe° land of flaishing uppon falowe°
- \*generall rule
- to stay for a good temper yet not to deferre it to longe
- f. 105<sup>r</sup>
- the assise in falowenge° in shalow falowinge° ye maye at twifalowe° ere under the furrows° so shall it not be turned upp rawe to growe againe
- in deep land
- in light land
- g]enerall rule
- for then will the sunne be able to peirce it, & after the next rayne it will dissolve & multer°, \* but if it be falowed° weatt the furrows° will ryse whole & stiffe: yf rayne come presently uppon it, it will breed bothe grasse & couche° & cawse yt to ryse sorddye° the next earthe: yf hott [~~wt~~] weather folowe
- 40 uppon a weatt falowe°, it will clinge, increase in grasse & muche rayne will not perce it to bringe it to so good tillage° as a drye falowe°.
- The stonne rushe° land must be falowed° drye or betweene bothe & if a dryth folowe it multers° to dust, if raine yet not so hurtfull as in clay land
- but in all sorts of land as muche as maye be avoyd flaishinge presentlye uppon
- 45 which breedeth grasse & weeds, skowrethe away muche of the goodnes of the land, which in the newe eringe before the earthe ys settled of it self: lying holowe with the force of the raine ys beate into the furrows°, & so ys carryed away: it lokethe as yf it were scalded & so at the next earthe rysethe clutchye & hard, \* for in all kind of tillage° loke howe ye leave it, so shall ye
- 50 fynd it.
- And take this for a generall rule, that althoughe the usuall tyme of falowe° be come, if the land be not dry or in good temper, ye must deferr it till it be seasonable, yf ye fynd not the land in temper within some convenyent tyme ye must needs proceed in your tillage° lest the saying of Solomon be verefied
- 55 in you, which ys: he that regardeth the wynde shall not sowe: & he that hathe respecte to the clowdes shall not reape. for tillage° maye be deferrd so longe that the dryth of the
- 1 sommer will not suffer you to fynishe it in any due tyme, so as if the land be not in good temper at the first it ys very convenyent to stay some reasonable tyme: yf it be not then in temper better it ys, to take it as it ys, then in deferring tyme to have yt in temper, ye overpasse the season, & tyme of the yere.
- 5 The assise (custom) in falowing°
- falowe° as shallowe as maye be so as ye ere it cleane with smale furrows°, & lay the greets crosse; for yf ye falowe° deepe, the thicknes of the furrows° cawseth that most sommers the slender raine cannot perse the grownde throughly wherby to bring it to good tillage°: cleane falowe° dothe much availe,
- 10 for if the dryth will not suffer to twifalowe°, the land by that means wilbe cleaner from weeds; & kynder to the seed; if the greets ioyne not close or a litle overlape, the grasse will growe betwene, if the henting° furrows be throwne or tornd up to hie the grasse will growe owt under, & if the furows° be so thicke that the raine cannot perce, the couche° or sorde° that lyeth under, cannot so will
- 15 rott.
- The sise of rudge°
- In deepe land which ye meane to [~~me~~] sowe a mydd rudge°, falowe° at sixe furrows°
- the rudge°, & at sowing make eight
- In stonne rushe° & light land, falowe° at foure furrows° the rudge° & <sup>at</sup> sowinge
- 20 make sixe of ech rudge°.
- note that in all tillage° smale rudge° do beare the best corne.
- if ye do not ere the great furrowes° clene but go catchinge here & there entending to hidd suche balke (ridge) with the henting° furrows; or if ye ere the rudge° at
- three
- furrows°, one greeete furrow°, & two hentings°, to thend to hast up the worke it
- 25 is a great inconvenienc, & a badd tillage°: for bothe in thone & the othere the henting° furrowe, being hoyst very hie to ioyne with the greets the sordye° grownd

which should have been erde up to make the other greet furrowe°, groweth owt  
under

& at twifalow° rysethe whole & couchy°, & at sowing because it happneth  
to fall owt in the henting°, when it should be mallowe to be trilld (turned) upe  
30 cleane, uppon the syde of the rudge°; the couchy° clumpers° falleth still  
backe into the furrowe° which is bothe a [dishaght?] & also an occasion  
osttymes that the water ys stopt in the furrows° & cawsethe the whole  
rudg° to lye sudging in weate besyds the hurt of the grasse which  
will growe & annoy the corne, so as every furrow° ought to be cleane  
35 ered & the greets layd close, for the growd being a like broke in every place  
must needs do well.

Tyme of twifalowe° for wheate

tyme of  
twifalowe°

the best tyme to beginne to twyfalowe° in deepe land ys about [~~viii or viii~~ ~~or viii~~ ~~days~~  
~~before~~]

St James<sup>tyde</sup> if the temper be good, & the wether fayre & so proceed with the rest  
of [~~the~~]<sup>your</sup>

40 Land as fast as ye cann have good tillage° for it for if ye twifalowe° to rathe°  
the weeds will encrease before ye sowe it, yet this good commeth of rathe°  
twifalowe° in deepe land, that it ys better settled & will abyde farre more  
raine at sowing then a late twifalowe°, if the sowinge happ to be weat: on the  
othersyde if ye<sup>be</sup> constrained to make a dry twifalowe°, if the sowinge be weat  
45 it ys a greate helpe.

assisse in  
twifalowe°

at twifalowe° it best to ere somewhat deepe, deeper always then at falowe°, so  
shall ye have [~~ye~~] at sowing (for then ye must ere shalowe for burying the corne)  
[~~ear~~] mallowe [~~er~~] earth under the furrows° wherby it may the better shott  
downward

& take deeper roote.

temper for  
deepe & light  
land with the  
inconvenyenc  
of not  
twifalowing°  
\*this was  
found true in  
the peece  
above the  
woods in ano  
1596

50 *althoughe experyenc willeth to beware of a drye twifalowe for wheate in clay  
land to avoyd purots° (which are always bredd by a dry twifalowe) in stonnrushe°  
& sand for feare of popy & other like weeds; yet of to evells it ys good to chuse  
the lest for if the sommer be moyst, the deepe land withowt twifalow° wilbe  
so full of grasse, the stonnrushe° & sand so ranke° of all sort of weeds \* that at  
55 sowing they beinge but partly torned in, & those that lye on the toppe beaten in  
with  
the raine, do take such deepe roote before the hard tyme of winter, that in the  
springe they increase above the corne & do keepe it under, & do take away the  
goodnes of the soile, for their norishment which otherwise would be converted to  
thencease*

& maynten<sup>anc</sup> of the corne. The grasse in clay land being torned to bennetts° ys  
a greate eater & spoile to the wheate & thother weeds in light land so hurtfull

f. 105<sup>v</sup>

1 *that it ys better in deepe land to thwart° it which ys the best waye to kill the  
couche° in lighter land to twifalowe° yt which killeth all weeds already growne  
upp\* But if the sommer be dry & the land cleane at twyfalowe°, it ys  
better to leave it untwifalowed°, then otherwyse, for the inconvenyenc ys  
5 greater that commeth of a twifalowe° in this case, then to leve it undonne  
for if uppon your twifalow° in deepe land folowe mucche weate, the land  
wilbe so weate ye shall hardly sowe it, besyds the inconvenyenc before  
remembred the not twifalow° ys the cawse the land ryseth more whole  
which ys remedyed in taking of smale furrows° at sowinge, howe soever the  
10 yere falleth owt, but yf the land be weedy & must needs have a dry  
twifalowe°, a resonable wett sowing do mucche helpe that inconvenyenc.*

a dry somer  
the gore peece  
was so cleane  
from wedds &  
curryed by the  
dryth of the  
sommer that it  
came to profit  
good tillage°  
with aowt  
twifalow° in

ano 1594  
inconvenyenc  
of twifalowe°

note the  
rather° ye  
twifalow° the  
better the earth  
wilbe settled &  
abyde more  
raine at  
sowinge

note that if the  
temper serve  
well to  
twifalowe°  
rathe° & ye  
feare the  
increase of  
weeds before  
sowinge, it ys  
best to clift it  
only & then ye  
may hent° it  
after & keepe  
it better from  
weeds & at  
tyme  
convenyent  
make more  
speed

yf ye be  
constraned by  
dryeth° to  
twifalowe°  
dry, it ys best  
but to clift it &  
to hent° it  
when the raine  
commeth, so  
shall ye have  
indefferent  
temper &  
make more  
speed toward  
sowinge

ere deper at  
twifalow° then  
at falowe°, els  
the sord° that  
was turnd in at  
falowe° wilbe  
but shott so  
turned up  
againe will  
grow against  
sowing

*Note that howsoever ye dispose or alter your tillage° whether to prevent a wett yere or a drye yere, yet the alteracion of the yere may crosse your entent, according to the proverb (the husbandman knoweth not when he doth well), for hoping to do well in twifalowinge° his grownd, often tymes so much raine comethe that he cannot sowe which not being twifalowd° he might have donne, & so thinking to have curried the weeds & made his land more mallowe & fatt to the seede by means of the holownes of the earthe with mucche raine ys tord to myre & so ys prevented for sowing it at all, & by this one ye may iudge of othere casualities which do often hynder the husbands entent. But this ys to be well consydered that he which cann take best temper for his land, & know when to take eche kynd of earthe in his best temper, observing therwith all as nere as may be the convenyente tyme of the yere, shall sildome faile of good corne, & if his land be not in good temper at the first to stay for a better yet not so long that he let passe the tyme of the yere if he be dryven by necessitye of the wethere & tyme to geve a badd falowe°, it is very needfull to wathe a good tyme to geve that land a good twifalow°, which dothe mucche helpe the inconvenyence of thother, & becawse we knowe not before what wether will folowe after, it ys good always of two evells to chuse the lest, As for example if after your falowe° the tyme prove wett & cawseth the land to growe with weeds & cowche°, it ys better to twifalowe° it yea althoughe it be dry & like to breede pu°ots then (fearing a wett tyme to be bardd from sowing) to turne in the weeds & corne bothe together, And the reason ys first it ys as likely to torne to the best as the worst, for the twifalow° killinge the weeds if the sowing prove kynd, it cannot chuse but be good corne & the twifalowe° beinge dry a wett & seasonable sowing maye mucche helpe it. the inconvenyenc ys if it cannot be sowen by means of to mucche wett, it will be sowen to other corne which ys more profitt, then in turninge in weeds & cowche° to have the corne ove°come & kept under at the springe with popy, mawdren & bennetts°. for it ys better (accordinge to common speche) to have a good acre of barly, then a badd acre of wheate.*



- Thwarting<sup>o</sup> at  
 twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in  
 cowchy<sup>o</sup>  
 grownd good
- 45 *Thwarting<sup>o</sup> the land at twifalowe<sup>o</sup> dothe mucche good in a cowchy<sup>o</sup> grownd & lest labor, as it appered in the owtsyde of cholcrosse pece 1595*  
 ye must not rere your Rudgs<sup>o</sup> to hye at twifalow<sup>o</sup> for then at sowing it will lye  
 flatt by means  
 it must then be ered shalowe for doubt of burying: but [~~lay~~] the first furrow<sup>o</sup> must  
 be layd  
 in the botome of the [~~Tyme of sowing for wheate~~] furrow<sup>o</sup> & then lay the greets  
 closse but
- 50 not overlapt, & ech furrow<sup>o</sup> layd to that the furrow<sup>o</sup> may almost be even with the  
 topp of the rudg<sup>o</sup> & so the  
 first furrowe<sup>o</sup> at sowing, being tought layd up against the rudge<sup>o</sup> syde, & thother  
 furrows<sup>o</sup> ered smale & layd close will
- inconvenyenc  
 of wett & dry  
 twifalowe<sup>o</sup>
- 55 *dry twifalowe<sup>o</sup> in clay land bredethe purotes<sup>o</sup>, if a raine do flaishe uppon a twifalowe<sup>o</sup> [~~if~~] bredethe thistles, a wett springe bredethe thistles & all other weeds if it be could withall. as it appereth in ano 1596*  
 Tyme of sowing for wheate
- cold land
- sowe cold land betyms if the temper be good fortnight before michaelm<sup>a</sup>s ys best  
 to beginne & to sowe graybald wheat in the clay land proveth heaviest toppe  
 sowe betyms that it may take roote before the could of winter
- light land  
 & also in hevyl  
 land
- In light land & stonnrushe<sup>o</sup> land beginne to sowe ix or x days after michaelmas  
 els
- 60 the eare will prove the lighter if it be sowen to rathe<sup>o</sup>, culverbald provethe  
 best in light land
- f. 106<sup>r</sup>  
 barren land
- 1 *also ye must note that land owt of hart must be sowen rather<sup>o</sup> for that is longer in taking of roote, & so ons behind, still behind*  
*but land that ys hartie, or well dunged maye be sowen later, becawse it taketh roote rathere<sup>o</sup>, encresethe faster, & in short tyme owt groweth thother*
- good land
- 5 In clay land sowe wett, so it be not so wett that the oxen do tredd it in & bury it  
 for it ys [~~th~~] tryed by experienc that if wheat be sowen dry it bredethh great  
 store of [~~bur~~] purotes<sup>o</sup>, if it be also sowen wise to wheate it encresethe  
 the purotes<sup>o</sup>, also a dry twifalowe<sup>o</sup> dothe breed purots<sup>o</sup> but a [~~dry~~] <sup>wett sowinge</sup>  
 [~~twifalow~~]  
 dothe somewhat helpe.
- temper in  
 clay land
- 10 In stonnrushe<sup>o</sup> land sowe as wett as may be (so it be not flasht uppon) & it will  
 prove the hevier toppe if it be sowen dry, the corne wilbe light, short, &  
 smale eared, & beinge sowen wise to wheate together, it proveth in like sorte as  
 it  
*dothe in dry sowinge, besyds it bredethe great store of land fetches as it appered*  
*in Corstons field in ano 1594 being sowen wise to wheate & drye also.*
- sowing wheat  
 after beanes
- 15 To sowe clay land one croppe to beanes another to wheate, is always best &  
 most proffitt, for the beanes is almost as good as a fould dinging<sup>o</sup> to the land as it  
 apered in the cowlease pece, in ano 1596 beinge part of him sowen to beanes  
 thother part to barly, the croppe before, & being folded all alike against  
 wheat sowinge that part which was beanes the croppe before did prove
- 20 [~~farr~~] farr better corne then thother.
- dry sowinge  
 badd
- yf wheat be dry sowen it will never prove so good corne as that which ys sowen  
 wett althoughe the yere be never so wett after, but will prove accordinge to  
 the nature of the temper it ys sowen in as it appered in William Bushes land  
 above the gaston in ano 1596, which being dry sowen did prove light shorte  
 25 & smale eared, not withstandinge the wett sommer.

dry sowinge  
faire in the  
winter

Note that for the most part dry sowinge proveth very faire in shewe  
all the winter, but at shotinge tyme, & towards the hoke° it fadethe  
& decayethe

dry sowinge  
do bury

Note also that as in deepe land wett sowinge dothe often bury either with to  
30 great furrows° or deepe treadinge of the oxen, So dothe dry sowinge very  
often tymes bury by means that the dust shotethe always into the furrow° at the  
sullowe taile from the syde of the rudge° & chokethe the seed expecially if ye  
go amyddrudge to prevent it ye must go with smale furrows° & shalowe, but if  
the  
land ryse whole, & the drythe contynue sometyme after, the corne wilbe attaint  
35 before it canne fynd a waie owt, as it happend one yere in the owt syde of my  
pece

but this falleth owt commonly in rathe° sowinge before the grownd by the corse  
of yere [dothe a eve?].

example of the  
inconvenyenc  
of dry sowinge  
note a dry  
falow° dothe  
never hurt

*note that the sheepehowse peece being apt to breed purots° 1596 was falowed°  
dry clyfted at twifalowe° dry & hented° betweene bothe, some part of it sowen  
40 when the raine had but a lytle wett it & so did ere light & was presently  
flasht uppon, this when it came an eare did prove half purots°. The rest  
of the same land on bothe sydes beinge wett throughly with the raine, then  
sowen, & having a senight of faire wethere after did prove to be good wheat  
& cleane from purotos°*

in the gore  
pece in ano  
1594

45 *annother pece of ground beinge falowed° in good temper & not neding any  
twifalowe°  
by means of the dryth that yere, the one part beinge sowen the croppe before  
to barley & thother to wheate, falowed° altogethere, that part which was before  
to barley after a smale raine was sowen somewhat light which proved Resonable  
cleane from purotos°, two rudge° of that which was before to wheate, beinge  
50 sowen at the same tyme, lighte, became altogethere purotos°, the rest of that  
which was before wheate lande was sowen after a raine when the grownd was  
in temper which not with standinge had many purots° in it, And thus we fynd  
by experyence that sowinge twice to wheate ys a great breder of purotos°, but  
being sowen also dry, it torneth in a manner altogethere to purotos° as apperethe  
55 by the two rudge° before mencyned.*

flashinge  
bredeth  
purots° &  
other weeds  
f. 106<sup>v</sup>

*if sowinge the land be presently flaisht uppon it cawseth the purots° to encrease  
by means the beinge then come up, or at the least a chissome with the beatinge of  
the*

1 *raine on the earthe, are partlie discoverd beinge before hidd with the earthe,  
partly  
lying on the toppe in the turnyng of the earthe with the beating of the raine  
are setled & rooted a newe which otherwise those which are under the earthe  
the clodds would multer° still uppon them & bury them, the other lyinge  
5 on the toppe would wither & vanishe, And this rule ys to be noted also  
of all other weeds beinge on the grownd at sowing tyme, especialye of  
grasse which breedinge [~~bet~~] bennetts° ys very hurtfull to wheate  
note that rathe° sowinge commethe upp always better then late sowinge  
& therefore ye must sowe more seeds towards the later end, then the  
10 beginninge*

more seed at  
[first] latter  
end of sowing  
then at the  
beginnyng  
assisse in  
quantity of  
seed

sowe good wheate, as pickt wheat somewhat thicke, for yt soone filleth  
the land, & decreaseth the sower & note allways that in land

which commonly bredeth weeds it ys best to sowe very thicke for otherwise the weeds will encrease & keepe downe the corne, before  
 15 the corne cann wryde about cover the [ea] grownd, but in land unapt to brede weeds (as by often tillage° ye shall find the differenc) if the land be not very strounge it ys best to sowe somewhate the thinner, because the [better] corne will wryde the better & beare the fairer eare.

assisse in sowinge

20 *In deepe land sowe wheate amyddrudge, & querne the clifte, & make the furrows° smale & set them an end, & so likewise in stonne rushe° land but ye must sowe that a furrowe°, for in eithere by makinge smale furrows° & setting them an edge ye shall bury lesse & lay the rudge° up rownder, but in land that ys very light & drye it ys best to ere*

\*brod & deepe furrows° buried in the oxelese peece next oxlease. 1595

if the land lye not very flatt it is better to make smale rudge° & to eare° tought a furrowe° for in midrudge the henting° ryseth whole & lyvery & bury the the corne

\*This was donn in the ij acres under the bushes & proved good corne 1595

assise of rudge° in clay land

\*ering amydd rudg at twy-falowe°

in stonnrushe° Land

henting° furrowe

\* this buried all the syds of the rudge° in oxe lese pece

25 *the furrows° shalowe & lay the rudge° flatter, but in all sorts of land ye must ere shalowe at sowinge \* for if ye make the furrows° bigge as at falowinge° (be the land never so well in temper) ye shall bury much especially towards the<sup>end</sup> of sowinge, because the corne being not able to passe through the furrowe° or betwene the furrows° beinge brode or thicke; (as*  
 30 *it will do, if the furrows° are smale & set an edge) runnethe under to fynd a way owt untill it be attainte & so dyeth; besyds the sunne wantinge force at that tyme of the yere to multer° the clodds ys the cawse that the corne ys attainte before it cann fynd awaye owt, where the furrows° being smale & set up an end, the corne issueth owt*  
 35 *betwene the furrows° howsoever the yere fallethe owt.*

if the sowinge be wett go with smale furrows° set an end that the corne may passe owt betwene \* but if the Rudge° neede not be layd very hye ere the furrows° shalowe that the corne maye sowne passe throughe.

40 *In clay land go amydrudge make viij<sup>th</sup> furrows° to a rudge°, & strike upp the core which cawsethe the rudge° to lye higher & cleaner for the water to passe in the furrowe°, yet if<sup>it</sup> [the] be very wett at sowinge, it ys better to leave it undonne, because in strikinge upp the core, the oxen [~~make the~~] may stock the sydes of the ruds°, & in this case it shalbe better to clense the furrows° with a spade \* if the rudge° be sixtene or twentie furrows° a rudge° ye must go a mydd rudge° as well at twifalow° as at sowinge, or els the syds of the rudge° will lye flatt & sugging in water, & therefore in all kinde of tillage° a smale rudge°, clenly layd upp is best.*

*In stonne rushe° land ye must go a furrow° with vj furrows° to the rudge° &*  
 50 *see that as well in this as in all other kinds of [tillage] land ye do not overlappe the greet furrowes°, but let them ioyne close & no more, & the henting° furrows must be quernd, & ered smale for oftentyms to have a furrow°, & shift uppe the worke \* they make greate henting° furrows, & bury the lower part of the rudge°, also to ere the henting° furrowe*  
 55 *as shalowe as may be, ys best, for he comonly rysethe whole & hevy, & being ered deepe, hathe oftymes deade earthe in him*

- ano 1595  
+rathe<sup>o</sup> sowing  
lesse seeded
- note to sowe more seed at the end of sowing then at the beginnige, for it comethe up better at the beginnyng, then at the end, besyds the fowlds devour muche
- f. 107<sup>f</sup>  
popy thistles  
& mawdren<sup>o</sup>
- 1 dry sowing in light land bredeth popy & weeds & so dothe a dry sommer encrease popy muche wett sowing bredethe thistles & mawdren<sup>o</sup>, but if the may [~~& I~~] or Iune by wett it bredeth thistles; & mawdren<sup>o</sup>, thoughe the sowing be drye
- in the pece  
next the  
way to the  
mill all the  
lower end was  
buried by this  
means
- 5 if the land be of two tempers as some part shalowe & nighe the rock, & the other deepe, although ye go as deepe as the rock will geve leave in the one part, ye must not go so deepe in thother part lest ye bury your seed, but when ye come to the deepe land ye must carry your hand therafter to ere shalowe
- it proved so  
throughout  
my pece being  
sowen  
somewhat dry  
ano 1569  
the fullow
- 10 note to enquire the cawse why one syde of the rudge<sup>o</sup> commethe upe worse then thother as ys oft tymes seen, & which ys best henting<sup>o</sup> either up hill or downe hill
- note that at sowing the fullow must be narowe in the taile & ye must always kepe a good poynt on the shere bothe at sowing & at all other earthes, els he will not ere cleane; some do use <sup>to</sup> have a fether on the [~~fure~~] one syde of the shere to strike
- 15 upp the core cleane  
sowe rye in September, & in the beginnyng of October  
sowe wheat in the later half of September & all october but end wheate sowing by Alhallowtyde  
sowe rye in the drythe<sup>o</sup>, but wheate when the grownd ys moist
- Rules for  
sowing wheat  
& Rye
- fowlding  
uppon  
gretten<sup>o</sup>
- 20 Note it is good to have the fowld go from over Lady day till myddmaye on deepe land uppon gretten<sup>o</sup>, & not longer, because by that tyme it ys best to have all deepe Land falowed<sup>o</sup>, then uppon stonnerushe<sup>o</sup> land till mydsommer, for then commonly the sheepe wilbe shoren, after uppon light land uppon the gretten<sup>o</sup>, till St James tyde, if ye have any suche
- 25 light land, & by that tyme it ys fitt that all sorts of land be falowed<sup>o</sup>  
And uppon the falowe<sup>o</sup> ye may fowld on any sort of land till seed tyme but that ys most proffitt which ys uppon the twifalowe<sup>o</sup> to be tornd in with the seede
- uppon the  
falowe<sup>o</sup>
- turning it  
in
- 30 Note that as fast as it ys fowlded on the gretten<sup>o</sup> it ys best to turne it in presently yf the land be any thinge dry, or els the sunne will burne it & make it lesse proffitable
- Note con-  
cerning  
sowinge
- To gripe<sup>o</sup> where neede ys presently uppon sowinge, or els the raine maye prevent you, & make it so wett that it will not be donn so fittly
- 35 To dragge one drawght (load) uppon a rudge<sup>o</sup> before ye sowe, the earthe may be freshe to the seed
- dragging after  
falowe<sup>o</sup>  
\*this I found  
turnd in my  
acre shoting  
from bredmors
- 40 after falowing<sup>o</sup> when the sunne hath well curried the land, it ys good after a raine to dragge the land one drawght a rudge<sup>o</sup> to breake the clodds\* but it ye do it longe before ye twifalowe<sup>o</sup> the weeds will encrease the faster, but in land that <sup>at</sup> falowe<sup>o</sup> do ryse melowe & light land I thinke it better not to dragge it, because the oftener it ys moved the more dothe the heate of

- well 1595  
dragginge  
against seed
- 45 the sunne dry upp the substance of it  
but after twifalowe° some will dragge the land before hand, but better it ys  
to dragge it freshe be fore the seede & kinder to the corne
- falowinge° in  
deepe land
- 50 *Tyme of falowinge° for barlie*  
*Tyme for falowinge° of barlye land, it is best if leasure will serve to clifte  
your clay or hevye land before wheate sowinge, or if it be to dry to sowe wheat  
ye cann do no better. & to hent° the clifte presently after wheate sowinge, for  
by this means ye shall have the cold land curried, & the clifte standinge so drye  
will at the hentinge° fall like dust. Then falowe° the hartiest barly land  
which ye meane to twifalowe° so sowne after wheate sowinge as may be, next  
the light land which ye meane not to twifalowe° would be clifted & hented° about  
Candlem<sup>a</sup>s, yet some do stay & then ere it altogethere, but the cliftinge ys best*
- in  
stonnrushe°  
Lande  
in light land
- f. 107<sup>v</sup>
- 1 *for that the furrows° taken from the clifts have all the harte of the winter  
to multer°, the clifts in the meane tyme lye drye, & at hentinge° [t̄] do  
milter° & cover in a manner the tother furrows° & the weeds that growe  
theron, and so ys bothe in the steede of a twifalowe° & better curried.*
- 5 falowe° always as drye as ye maye for so shall ye fynd it the kinder at  
twifalowe° & at sowinge.
- temper in  
falowing°  
barly land  
Land clene  
falowed° half  
tilled°
- 10 yt ys good to falowe° barlye land cleane, lest the tyme serve not to twifalow°  
for althoughe in a dry yere it seems not so hurtfull, yet in a wett yere  
it bredethe couche°, [ȳe] & bennetts°, yea althoughe it have a twifalowe°  
when it shall happ to be flasht uppon; as it hapened ano 1596: & therefore  
howsoever the yere fallethe owt, it ys one of the cheesest points of good  
husbandry [īn] <sup>for</sup> all kynd of corne to geve the land a clene falowe°.
- 15 *yf barly land in hevye grownd be turned to smale rudge° so as it may lye  
somewhat hye on the toppe of the rudge° in a wett yere it savethe it best  
from drownynge or beinge hurte with wett, because the dryethe° of  
the copped rudge° do cawse the barly to prove well if the yere be  
drye, yet in cold land the copped rudge° takethe litle hurte by means  
the heate is more kinde to cold land, & better it ys to abyde the hazard  
of a dry yere in could land, with the rudge° somewhate rownd, then to lay  
them\* flatt & with a wett yere to be downed which taintethe the barly  
clyngethe the grownd, & cawsethe that the eare sildome commethe owt  
of the hore, & seinge it ys a common experience that howsoever the  
land be layd the wether may prevent your entent, it ys good (according  
to the proverbe) to do for the best, & not to lyve still careles of the worst  
& of two evells to chuse the leste \* therfore in stonnrushe° land lay it as  
flatt as may be, for if the yere prove wett, it nothings hurtethe suche  
Land, if it prove drye, the flatter it lyethe the lesse it ys subiect to  
heate, & dryth of the sunne, which if the rudge° lye hye wilbe partcht  
tainted, & half withered.*
- 20 as it happned  
in the gore  
pece in ano  
1596
- 25 \*stonnrushe°  
Land
- 30 *Twifalowinge° Barly Land*  
*yf the grownd be wett, after a wett winter, the grownde at sowing besids  
the breeding of grasse & weeds, it will ryse whole & roll under the dragge  
yea somtymys in stonnrushe° land, especially in suche as bredethe couche°, but  
if it be twifalowed° it will dry more, fall malower, & the Rudge°*
- 35 *lye more plainer, to heale the seed, so as a twifalowe° in barly land  
howsoever the temper be ys best, for the barly sowen in dust ys best corne  
but the [rather] <sup>rather°</sup> in hevye land the better for then althoughe it rysethe  
whole at twifalowe°, yet either the frost, or varyetie of wethere by  
dryeth°, & moysture will multer° the clodds that it shall not clynge*
- Twifalow°  
good  
ment of  
twifalow° in  
light land  
great hurt  
1596  
in hevye land\*  
[rather late]  
rath°

twifalowe°  
 deepe to go  
 belowe the  
 falowe° if ye  
 go shalowe ye  
 slitt the  
 furrows° &  
 turne up the  
 rawe sorde°  
 in stonnrush°  
 Lande  
 the assise for  
 twifalow° ys  
 to ere deepe so  
 shall ye have  
 malow earth  
 duonge at  
 sowinge to  
 breed the  
 corne  
 \*temper for  
 twifalowe°  
 tyme for  
 twifalowe°

40 *but regard must be had as nye as may be that the twifalowe° be  
 not in the wett ot flaisht uppou which ys the chesest cawse of clinging,*

\*in stonnrush° land if ye twifalowe° but a senight before sowing so as the  
 wethere be faire it suffisethe, in a wett yere, or it the yere happneth  
 to be wett after sowinge a twifalowe° ys [~~ve~~] most needull, & althoughe  
 45 in a dry yere or <sup>when</sup> [~~will~~] it lyeth resonable cleane towards sowinge a twifalowe°  
 is lest needull, yet if leasure, & the wethere will serve, it ys always best  
 & will quyte the hardye to geve a twifalowe°, for if the yere fall owt wett  
 or drye, it shall prove the better corne, \* the best temper ys to twifalow°  
 as drye as that tyme of the yere will geve leave.

50 the convenyente tyme to twifalowe° in hevy land ys in the mydde of february  
 and beginnyng of marche if the wether be dry & no frost

Sowinge of barlye

barly sowinge  
 Virgilius  
 \*occasum  
 maia ys the  
 vj<sup>th</sup> of April  
 light temper  
 best

*if ye sowe barly & make accompt of a faire eare, let the starrs named  
 virgiliae or seven starrs be set before thow commytt the seed to the earthe  
 55 for many have sowed before the settinge of the starre\* maia & have  
 benne deceaved with otes & light corne*

*To sowe barly <sup>light</sup> [~~in dust~~] ys most prosperous. in dust breedeth short corne  
 wett barly sowing bredeth thistles.  
 ere shalowe at sowinge & cleane.*

f. 108<sup>r</sup>  
 tyme of  
 sowing

1 if need be that the tillage° be greate & the land in temper [wherby  
 beginne sowinge fortnight before our Lady day, & contynewe till the  
 end of Aprill & not longer, except uppou necessitie.

in hevy land  
 the want of  
 rath° sowing  
 was cawse that  
 much barly  
 proved ile in  
 cold land in  
 ano 1596 a  
 great raine  
 commyng in  
 maye  
 yet I finde by  
 experience  
 that late  
 sowing in  
 hevy land  
 proveth best  
 for the most  
 parte, by  
 means of the  
 heate of the

5 *sowe rather in hevy land so as the frost be gonn, that it may take roote betymes  
 otherwyse if great wett come in maij, it tainteth the barly, clingeth the ground,  
 & maketh the eare shorte yea somtymys the mawdren° increaseth & kepeth  
 it under, if it fall owt dry, yet [~~hath~~] <sup>having</sup> taken good roote it proveth resonable  
 eare \* in stonnerush° land sowing late is best, for if a weat yere come, or  
 being dry some raine fall before mydsomer the eare proveth faire & the  
 10 strawe longer, if it be rathe° sowed, howsoever the yere falleth owt, bothe  
 strawe & eare wilbe shorte, but this regard must be had howsoever the*

*yere falleth owt afterwards, that the land be mallow, & in good temper  
 at sowinge, for [~~the~~] <sup>by</sup> want therof in all kindes of sowing proveth badd, be the  
 yere never so seasonable & good. but this ys to be noted that in  
 15 a weat yere somewhat rathe° sowinge in light land proveth well, &  
 in a dry yere it proveth thick but short eared, & light land late  
 sowed in a dry yere if rained come by mydsomer proveth faire eard  
 but if the late sowinge be flasht uppou it proveth thinne as it  
 happned in ano 1595, & therefore for that we know not whether the  
 20 yere wilbe weate or dry, it ys good to prevent the worst, in*

- yere which ys most kynd for cold land & for the seed sowen in such land
- 25 using suche a meane as neither may do mucche damage, & that ys havinge regard to the temper which ys chesest, being curried with a twifalowe°, first sowe the hevy Land, next that which ys hartiest or dunged, & last the light & barest land
- sowinge of beanes
- 30 Note that flashing uppon bredeth mawdren° & thistles, & thoughe the sowing be kinde, yet if the sommer be wett it bredeth mawdren° very mucche *best sowing of beanes ys uppon gretten° for if the land be falowed° before they will prove smale, light, & shorte, as generall experyence teacheth, if the land be wett & like to bury ere shalowe, & make the furrows° smale, if toughe make the furrows° smale also, if dry, [~~h~~] or light, lay yt as flatt as maye be, & lett the greets but touche one another & after it ys frowed ij or iij days, dragge them uppon\* the best tyme to sowe ys in the waine of the moone, but yt is reasonable good any tyme after the first quarter but the newe ys naught, the moneth of ffebruary: or the beginninge*
- \*tyme of sowinge
- 35 *of marche ys best, but take heed of mucche wett & cold uppon it which will make the beanes swell & breake.*
- good to help the land
- yt ys good to sowe in clay land one croppe to beanes another to wheate for besyds that beanes proveth best in suche land, & ys most proffit it ys almost as good as a fowld dunginge & cawsethe the wheat to prove farr better then it will after barly.
- 40 *to sowe pese in very light land ys best the <sup>one</sup> [~~first~~] yere wheat [~~the~~] or messlyne the next, & barly the third for the pese dothe enratche (enritch) the land, & often chainge of seed bettrethe the corne.*
- this ys proved in [mr?] Rudge° tillage° 1596
- ile for the land
- 45 *yt decayeth the land, & lessnethe your croppe if ye so<sup>we</sup> one land twice together, either to wheate or to barlye.*
- wheat sowing
- In wheat sowing speciall regard ys to be hadd in deepe land & [~~some~~], other also, that the first furrows° be neither to brode, nor to deepe, nor in any wyse that they lappe one over the other, but onely touch to hidd the greet, & no more. that the other furrows° be answerable, & also the henting° furrowes
- 50 *smale, for if the furrows° be brode or deepe, if the dryth come uppon sowing the furrows° [~~w~~e] will be so hardned that the wheat running under wilbe attaint & wither, when neither it cann fynd a way through by means of the thicknes, nor issue owt betweene by means of the breadth, therefore I hold it best to ere deepe at twifalowe°, & shalowe with smale furrows°*
- this was the hurt of my owne pece next home mead 1603
- 55 *at sowing so shall the wheat have an easy passage to sute [~~u~~pp] upward & earth good store, to take rote downward this ys best tillag° for could, & deepe land.*
- f. 108<sup>v</sup>
- To kill puotes°
- 1 the best means to avoyd puotes° in land that ys apt to breed them although by wett twifalowe° & wett, sowing they are often kept from encreasing, yet yf by means of some unseasonable tillage° or nature of some yers they [~~fall~~] grow, & fall on the land the
- 5 onely means to avoyd them ys to make choyse of a wett tyme to twifalowe° & that betyms if you may & shortly after if a raine fall dragge it well, the grownd may lye mallow, to let owt the puotes°, then if the tyme be not to dry abowt a week after michaelmas, they will grow up greene, & then
- 10 abowt fourtnight after michaelmas the land being in temper ye shall sowe & torne the green puotes° in which ys the best way to ryde them, for then they will prosper no more for that yere, nor so apt to encrease the next.
- Barly sowing
- if the yere prove weat that it ryseth whole at twifalowe°, yet

15 in most land it ys better to twifalow<sup>o</sup> then to sowe it uppon the  
falowe<sup>o</sup>, for if the tyme prove kynd after it will frowe (crack) & breake  
at the next rayne lying holow after the twifalowe<sup>o</sup>, but if  
in your hevier land, when the furows<sup>o</sup> shall ryse whole, you  
dowbt a dryth, which comonly foloweth a wett tyme, you shall in  
20 two or three days after your twifalow<sup>o</sup>, or as sowe (sone) as you shall perceave  
the furows<sup>o</sup> somewhat dried, before the dryth hath forced &  
hardned them, dragg them & bread them well; so shall you be  
able to sowe it at all tymes, & the barly proving allways best  
in [~~shu~~] such growd as ys well curried & lyeth holowe & plumme (level),  
25 & therefore the breaking of it aforehand whiles yt is in temper  
to breake, ys a great helpe to breeding of it.

The onely falowe<sup>o</sup> for barly, ys in the somer or abowt michaelmas in  
hevy land, especially when the grownd is dry [~~fœr~~]<sup>so</sup> shall you  
have it malowe, even at sowing tyme, & let the twifalow<sup>o</sup>  
30 be deepe in a seasonable tyme & at sowing ere shalow your furrows<sup>o</sup>  
smale & cleane eared [~~well-dr~~] so shall the land break the better  
& being well harowed after sowing, & if need be before the  
ering also, it will lye plume, & holowe to the seed, & above  
all things choyse a seasonable sowing according to the nature  
35 of the land, & tyme of the yere, take every kynd of land in his  
best temper: but avoyd aways a wett sowing thoughe you  
stay the longer which will rowle (roll), smore (compress), & make ile worke,  
wherin the barly will never prosper. but if ye be compelled  
to sowe dry, [~~t~~] if the seed be well healed the corne may prove  
40 good, for the clumpers<sup>o</sup> & clodds may be broken with a maule,  
& the seed lye holow enoughe, but the hevly land as I sayd  
before may much be holpen with a sommer fallowe<sup>o</sup>, or dragging  
uppon twifalow<sup>o</sup> befor the furrows<sup>o</sup> harden to much

wheat falow<sup>o</sup>

To dragg the land, especially hevly land, & such as ryse whole,  
45 <sup>at</sup> falowing<sup>o</sup>, ys very good, when the rayne hathe throughlie weate  
the furrows<sup>o</sup>, so shall it be sow<sup>n</sup>er perst with the rayne against [~~sø~~]  
twifalow<sup>o</sup> & the twifalow<sup>o</sup> woork the rather<sup>o</sup> & more kyndlie dragging  
uppon twifalow<sup>o</sup>, when it is in season will cawse the raine to perse it  
the better, for a rathe<sup>o</sup> sowing, & maketh it the malower but if

f. 109<sup>r</sup>

1 you feare a weate sowing, either dragg it long before for so will  
the earth settle & not receive the rayne so sodainly or els use it  
sparingly for if it be not dragged, it will receive much raine  
before it be over wett.

barly  
twifalow<sup>o</sup>  
experienced

5 yf the land be deepe & toughe, twifalow<sup>o</sup> if the wether be dry  
presentlie uppon Candlem<sup>a</sup>s, so shall it have sufficient tyme to frowe  
& multer<sup>o</sup>, & in [~~shu~~] such land you need feare no weeds, for if  
it be cleane & deape eared the tyme of the yere will not permitt  
them to growe, & if the [~~the~~] frost do hinder you, yet commonly it will  
10 thawe it that tyme of the yere towards the afternone, therefore  
take the advantage of the afternone, thoughe ye do the lesse, so <sup>as</sup> you  
cann eare<sup>o</sup> yet cleane for the breach of the wether may prevent you  
with sodaine raine & the land toward the later tyme of twifalow<sup>o</sup>  
will ryse whole & clynge with the march wynds, therefore whe[~~f~~]ther  
15 it be rathe<sup>o</sup> or late, take the best <sup>tyme</sup> while it serveth.

barlie sowing

at barlie sowing yf the wynd be sowth or west, ye may sowe a weeke



- before our Lady day, or the wether myld, otherwyse stay the longer, for rathe<sup>o</sup> sowing & cold bothe, bredeth shorte barlie, & in [~~ma~~] deepe grownd & hevy breedeth charlock<sup>o</sup> to the great hurt of the corne, therefore if
- 20 the whether serve be doing the rather, lest a sodaine [~~wea~~] raine, or a contynuyng dryth prevent you. otherwyse stay the tyme, & hope for the best.
- wheat falow<sup>o</sup> falow<sup>o</sup> wheat land betymes in the yere lest the drieth prevent you & especially beane land for if be not torne betyms the couche<sup>o</sup> will not be killd but growe up & choke the wheat. experienc in the drie yere 1605.
- experyence in 25 [~~at~~] <sup>towardes</sup> barlie sowing if ther fall owt a wett tyme at twyfalow<sup>o</sup> so as the tyme of my pece 1605 the yere grow on to sowe, yet such deep land as do ryse hevie without twyfalowe<sup>o</sup>
- will never worke kyndlie for to receave the seed. but when it is twifalowd<sup>o</sup> [~~drage~~] breake it with the dragge: before the dryth clinge it or if it be so clinge by means of the dryth contynuyng that in breaking it torne up
- 30 in great clumpers<sup>o</sup>. break them first with mawls then eare<sup>o</sup> it & dragge in the seed & after those clumpers<sup>o</sup> that remaine breake with the mawle. for the mawling before cawseth the land to ere more suent. wherby ye shalbe hard to bring it to profit tillage<sup>o</sup>
- beane sowing sowe not beans to thicke for in sowing thicke they will show fayr but <sup>the beane</sup> prove very
- 35 smale. let the yere fall owt never so wett. experience in the gore pece 1604 make your wheat land redie betymes at lest a fortnight before michaelmas especiallie a cold clay. lying in the up field that the fold having overgonne it, & of by that tyme, to be sowne as soone as the temper serve the wheat [~~make~~] maie take roote before winter, els a wett winter folowing, will do it much harme.
- 40 note also that such land being brechie, will prosper well with a drie sowing
- f. 113<sup>r</sup>  
For graffing 1 Necessary notes for perserving of sheepe sownd with remedyes being rott and also note for graffing
- for graffing 58 Take your graffe on thest (the east) syde of the tree in the middest of the owt syde, for the toppe is to ranke<sup>o</sup> & the water bowghes will never beare well or next the body the graffs with most eyes will prove the best beareres

f. 114<sup>r</sup>

- 1 Note what frute ys graffed in Kelston  
orchard in marche 1593  
In the first Rank
- first & second pepins  
5 third <sup>muste apple & fisher Mr harringtons</sup> [~~Lawrene apple & Russet pepyn~~]  
fourth [~~ponewater~~] three Redde pepins [thom<sup>a</sup>s flowrs?] one redd pepin Mr Harr.  
first a [pylynly?] of the fflo<sup>w</sup>res  
fifte boxe apple  
sixte <sup>a nymes apple</sup> [~~yellow hore apple . toby deacons~~]  
seventhe pepine .William Atwoods  
10 eight [~~pearmaine~~] grene apple .Toby deacons  
nynthe pearmain<sup>o</sup> .Mr harringtons  
tenthe [~~dusan~~] boxe apple .John Brodes

## In the second ranke

- first a <sup>hosier & Cycether apple</sup> [~~culver apple John Brodes of twirton~~]  
15 second gusterdegge  
third [~~bellybone~~] right pearmaine<sup>o</sup> & parzon  
fourth boxe apple  
fifte [~~penyapple~~] a <sup>frute Mr harr.</sup> [~~parzon~~] <sup>gelyflore Glowe permaine</sup> spurrier, [~~pepin~~] remet etc.  
sixt [~~sergeant~~] russet cote & <sup>fisherman</sup> [~~quenapple~~] at corston  
20 seventh & eighth greneapples <sup>black apple & pepin of Newton</sup> .Toby deacons  
nynth hemmynge  
tenth culver apple .John Brodes  
eleventh [~~spurrier neems-apple~~] <sup>a kentish apple</sup> [~~permaine~~] & saphire & parzon

## In the third Rank

- 25 first hemmynge  
second Rewd apple .Toby deacons  
& a saphire .thirde <sup>one dusan<sup>o</sup> ij rewd apples</sup> [~~pearmaine .William Atwoods~~]  
fourth [~~& ij~~] fisher apple & a cold apple  
fifte <sup>a russet pepin & parzon</sup> [~~quene apple & domine Cavade~~]  
30 sixt <sup>a wynter queening</sup> [~~greenynge box apple, & neems apple~~]  
seventh wynter quenyng  
eighth pepyn .william Atwoods  
nynth & tenthe pearmain<sup>o</sup> .Mr Harringtons  
eleventh pepin .william Atwoods
- 35 the overmost by the hedg bothe must apples [~~a russet?~~]  
the nethermost ther ~~a kentishe apple~~  
the tree in the hopp yeard a neems apple  
the tree [~~next?~~] <sup>in the farrsyde the hoppyerd lowmost the L [marams?] frute</sup> [~~a pese field a papple~~]  
the tree that stands upmost there a great Russet apple  
40 the tree in the corner of the lower garden a dusan<sup>o</sup> of dorsetshere  
in the hoppyeard [iii<sup>or?</sup>] warden<sup>o</sup> trees  
the over peartree next the [ye] waie a Robert peare; henry taylors  
[~~the nether peare tree a damson peare~~  
the]

f. 115<sup>v</sup> (upside down)

- 1 Note what frute ys graffed in kelston orchard  
beginning with the first rank the overend in  
Ianuar: 1589  
first rank
- 5 the first and second [~~hore apples~~] pepyns Mr h.  
the third a lawrenc apple  
the fourth a pomewater  
the fift a boxe apple a boxe apple  
the sixt a sergeant a Sargeant
- 10 the seaventh a pepyn [~~smale~~]  
the eight a grening deacons<sup>1</sup>  
the nynth a Russet apple Mr h.  
the tenth a ~~pypin great grenyng the best~~ <sup>a dusan<sup>o</sup></sup>
- second Rank
- 15 The first a ~~grening willice~~ <sup>a culver apple</sup> a ~~grening willice~~  
The second & third [bellybones] gusterdegge & bellybone  
the fourth a boxe apple a boxe apple  
the fift a spurryer & ~~boxe apple~~ spurryer & ~~boxe apple~~ <sup>peny apple</sup>  
the sixt a Sergeant a sergeant
- 20 the seventh a [~~pepin~~]  
the [~~seventh and~~] eight a [~~pepin Mr perfins a hard apple~~ <sup>grening</sup> deacons  
penyapple  
the nynth a [~~grening~~ <sup>dusan</sup> ~~decons,~~ <sup>hemmyng</sup> ~~hemmyng~~]  
the ~~tenth~~ a ~~eastard~~ <sup>ruset</sup> & ~~penyapple~~ <sup>a culver apple</sup>  
the eleventh a spurrier
- third Ranke
- 25 the first a ~~great pipyn~~ <sup>a hemmyng</sup> a ~~great pypin~~  
the second a Rewd apple decons<sup>2</sup>  
the third a Russet apple [...?]  
the fourth a ~~peny apple grenyng the best~~ <sup>a yelow hard apple decons</sup>
- 30 the fift a quene appele ~~or hemmyng~~  
the sixt a black apple a black apple  
the seventh a wynter apple a wynter ~~quene apple~~ queenyng  
the eight a pipyn ~~smale~~  
the nynth a Russet apple a Russet apple Mr h.
- 35 the tenth a Russet apple  
the eleventh a pypin ~~small~~

in the over end

a boxe apple & a pepyn of glostershene

Note to get graffe of the kentishe apple in the west contry.

- 40 what mores ar planted in the hoppeyard  
[~~The lower Rank John wests mores the first Rank~~  
~~The second & third Ranks the roots of the great hopp in the Common~~]

<sup>1</sup> must be Toby Deacon from before

<sup>2</sup> Toby Deacon again

f. 116<sup>r</sup> (right side up)

graft at Corston

the first on the right hand

a Costard. seond a lordling.

third.        iiiij<sup>th</sup> a spurrier

5 v<sup>th</sup> a penyapple. sixt a grening

deacons. vjth a [~~quene apple~~]

vijth a

first a quene apple. second <sup>a</sup> quenapple

iijd a boxe apple. iiiijth a permaine

10 Mr h: vth a boxe apple. [~~v~~] vjth

a quene apple. seventh a

first a penyapple. second a pepin

william A. third a bellybone. iiiijth a

pepin william A. vth a                    . the

15 vjth a grening. vijth [~~unknown frute~~]

first a black apple & spurrier. second

an unknown frute. iijd a bellybone

iiiijth a permaine Mr h. [~~vth a boxe apple~~]

vjth a sergeant. vijthe a servic berry

20 first [~~an unknown frute~~]. second grening

third a dusan°. iiiijth a permaine william

A. vth a boxe apple. vjth a grening

willys

first a permaine william A: second an

25 unknowne frute

first a                    . second a                    .

third a [~~pepin Mr parsons~~], iiiijth a

. vth an unknowne frute. sixt

a                    . seventh a quenapple

f. 116<sup>r</sup> (upside down)

Note what frute ys graffed in Kelston

orchard beginning with the first Ranke

the overend in Ianuar 1588

Imprimis the first & second                    hore apples

5 Item the third a lawrence apple

Item the fourth & [~~fifte~~]                    plumwater[s]

Item the fifth                    boxe apple

Item the sixt                    [~~a bellybone~~] a sergeant

Item the seventh                    a pipin smale

10 Item the eight                    [~~a fisher~~] a grening decons

Item the nynthe                    [~~grenning williee~~] a Russet apple

Item the tenth            [~~gremny deacons~~  
~~a grening willice}~~  
 a pypin great

The second Ranke

Imprimis the first        [~~a pypin great~~  
~~a poxei smale}] a grening [~~deacons}] willies~~~~

15 Item the second        [~~a sergeant}] a bellybone  
 Item the third            a bellybone  
 Item the fourth          [~~a penyapple}] a boxe apple  
 Item the fifte            a spurrier & boxe apple  
 Item the sixt             a Sergeant~~~~

20 Item the seventh & eight    peny apples  
 Item the nyth            [~~a costard a grening willies deacons~~  
~~a Russet apple a dusan}]  
 a Costard [~~a grening willies}] [~~penyapple & pypyn great}]~~~~~~

Item the xth  
 Item the xjth            spurrier

The third Ranke

25 Imprimis the first        [~~a costard grening deacons}] a pypyn great  
 Item the second          a Rewed apple deacons  
 Item the third            a Russet apple  
 Item the fourth          [~~a quene apple}] a peny apple  
 Item the fifte            a quene apple~~~~

30 Item the sixte            unknowen frute  
 Item the seventh         [~~a costard}] a wynter quene apple  
 Item the eight            [~~a Russet apple a Rewed apple}] a pipyn smale  
 Item the nyth            [~~smal pypen f...?}] Russet apple  
 Item the tenth            a Russet apple~~~~~~

35 Item the xjth            a pipen smale

The Rank at the head of thorchard

Imprimis the first        a greninge  
 Item the second          a belybone  
 Item the third            a boxe apple

40 Item the fourth          a Sergeant  
 Item the fifte            a quene apple  
 Item the sixt             a Costard

Note howe every tree shalbe graffed

two hore apples        two Rewed apples

45 one Lawrenc apple  
 one [~~two}] plumwater[s]  
 two bellybones  
 thre [~~two}] smale pypins  
 two Sergennts~~~~

50 thre [~~four}] peny apples  
 two spurriers  
 three [~~two}] boxe apples  
 three Russet apples  
 one [~~two}] quene apple[s]~~~~~~

55 two Costards Io willcoxe

one [two] fisher[s] Io Willcoxe  
 thre grene apples. willice & decons  
 dusan<sup>o</sup> at Corston one  
 one unknowen frute

f. 120<sup>v</sup> (left hand side)

- |    |                                |                      |  |
|----|--------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| 1  | w]hite Costard                 | Costard good to bake |  |
|    | peny apple                     | Io wests             |  |
|    | spurrier                       |                      |  |
|    | quene apple                    |                      |  |
| 5  | sargeant                       |                      | } good eatinge<br>frutes                   |
|    | plumwater                      |                      |  |
|    | peny apple                     |                      | } plumwater a<br>specyall frute<br>to Rost |
|    | Russet apple                   |                      |  |
|    | pepin great                    |                      |  |
| 10 | pepin william Atwoodes         |                      |  |
|    | [pepin at Smocomes at Twirton] |                      |  |
|    | Laurenc apples                 |                      | } sommer<br>frutes                         |
|    | great sweetinge                |                      |  |
|    | whitinge                       |                      |  |
| 15 | mynchinge                      |                      |  |

names of more & other frutes

costard Iohn Wyllcoxe

Bellybone

Sutherey

20 Rewed apple

[old? myaes?]

a Chislynd [spye apple] or mace apple

Rowetaile or Rowlinge apple

fisher or fisher apple

25 little sweetinge

white apple

an apple at Ric Babers at

Twirton

gustard egges 3 at Twirton

30 black apples

f. 120<sup>v</sup> (right hand side)

1 ...] are graffed

...or]chard beginny[ng

...c]omminge in

...ou]tmost Rank

5 the first at the

overend a boxe apple

the second a fisher apple [a pippin]

the third a lawrenc apple

the fourth & plumwater apples

10 fite

the sixt            Russet <sup>apples</sup> & bellibone  
 the Rest in that ungrafted  
 Rank

In the myddle Rank above begin[ne  
 15 the [~~first~~ <sup>first a pepin; William Atwoods</sup> [~~ungrafted~~]  
 & ~~second~~  
 the second            a Costard  
 the third            a bellybone [~~Russet apple~~]  
 the fourth            a penyapple [~~ungrafted~~]  
 20 the fift            a boxe & spurier apple  
 the sixt            a Sergeant  
 the vij<sup>th</sup> &            peny apple  
 viij<sup>th</sup>  
 the ix<sup>th</sup>            ungrafted  
                           [~~unknown~~]  
                           [~~apple~~]  
 25 the x<sup>th</sup>            peny apple  
 the xj<sup>th</sup>            spurier Bristowe

third Ranke beginne above  
 first &            ungraft  
 second  
 30 third & fourth    Russet apple  
 fift            ungraft  
 vj<sup>th</sup> [~~& vij<sup>th</sup>~~]    unknown fruit  
 [~~the Rest~~ — ungraft]

the x<sup>th</sup> a Russet pple  
 35 the Rest in that Rank [ungraft?

MS Ferguson 150

272

1 Pour avoir des Pesches deux mois  
devant les autres.

Prenez des buffes de Pesches et les entez<sup>o</sup> sur un franc<sup>o</sup> meurier (mûrier) et vous en aurez le contentement.

5 A far nascere frutti senz'osso.

Se vuoi far nascere i frutti senz'osso, quando il frutto è in fiore, fa un pertuso (pertugio) nel ramo, che passi da una parte all'altra, ch'i frutti di quei rami nasceranno sicuro senz'osso: & sarà cosa bella per donar à tutti.

10 Pour faire que les fruitz ne pourrissent  
point sur l'arbre.

Prenez un Cloud et le mettez au feu, & lorcequ'il sera tout rouge figez-le dans le pied de la plante.

15 Ou bien faictes seullemen un trou au pied de l'arbre avec quelque perçoise (vrille) & le laisser ouver. Car toute l'humeure (liquide) superflüe sortira dehors par le pertuis (trou) qui est la cause de la pourriture des fruitz.

Pour faire venir des Abricotz à force.

20 Ne manquer tous les ans au temps que lon (l'on) taille la vigne de tailler bon abricottier avant qu'ils commencent à fleurir et vous aurez des abricotz en quantité pour autant que ce sont en lieu qui fleurissent beaucoup, & ne boutonnen guere. Mais par ce moyen tout ce qui fleurira se [nouira (nourira)?] et demeurera sur l'arbre.

Pour faire lever promptement des graines.

Prenez de la Cendre chaude tiede & y semez et meslez bien quelque

273

1 graine que vous voudrez comme celle de Persil ou autre: & puis jettez suffizante quantité d'eau par dessus et il fera beau en une nuit.

Pour semer & faire venir l'herbe de  
Rheubarbe.

5 Il faut semer au printemps la vraine (graine) de Rheubarbe dans des vaisseaux de terre trouiez par dessouls & emplis de bonne terre grasse. Et tous les jours les arrouser sur la vespre (soirée). Et a [seurée?] de [shyuve?] quelle soit mise avec ses potz en lieu quelle ne puisse estre gashée (gâcher) par la froideur. La seconde année Il la faut transplanter en bonne terre grasse exposée au midy (Sud). Et la  
10 laisser en ce mesme lieu. La troiziesme année elle portera graine. Vous pouvez faire plusieurs autres herbes de la racine en la separant. On peut en garder la racine. Il la faut couper par petits morceaux. & la faire secher



en un filet ; si on en prend de vert, & que l'on en face oppression, deux scoupules  
(scrupel)<sup>1</sup>

15 font plus d'operation qu'une dragme de elle que l'on vend chez les  
droguistes.

#### Manière de cultiver les orangers

Faictes faire expier (fabriquer) des sceaux de bois, ou des petis coffres carrez qui soyent  
percez pare le dessouse & les faictes bandes de Cercles de bois ou de fer avec des  
bocles pour les portes, & que les fondz tiennen bien; puis les emplir de  
20 vieil fumier de couche<sup>o</sup> bien pourry & sec, & planter bon Orangers dedans,  
prenans bien garde que la racine ne [s'esuents?]. Et les arroser par le pied  
seullemen, et non sur la feuille, avec de l'eau puante et bien pourrie si non  
jamais avec de l'eau claire de peure qu'ilz ne meuren, en faizans tremper du fumier  
dans de l'eau pour les en arrouser de huict en huict jours seullement, si ce  
25 nest que lon cognoisse (conaisse) qu'ils soy en malladie, soie il en faudroie (faudra)  
faire de trois

en trois jours. Que s'ils sont arrosés de la pluye il ne les faudra mouil-  
ler de huict jours apres laquelle Eau leur sera grand bien.

Quand on cognoistra qu'ilz voudron fleurir, il faut bien prendre garde aux  
petites araignées qui se metten dessouse la feuille qui joiend le pied de

274

1 la fleur pour les ostee, en coullans le doigt le long de la feuille pour  
la nettoyée & les faire choir (tomber), pour ne quelles les mangen & les font  
tomber. Que si par adventure on en veut prendre quelques feuilles;  
Il faut bien prendre garde descorchier le boies en la cueillant: Mais  
5 que lon en prenne le moins qu'il se pourra si ce nest pour grande ne-  
cessité, care cella leur fait fou.

---

<sup>1</sup> Small measure of weight (as dragme)

Français 19087

Only a transcription of f. 33<sup>v</sup> is being presented here as the first set of gardening entries in this manuscript was copied from Gorgole de Corne's *Traicté de la manière d'enter, planter & nourrir arbres selon nostre climat* [1533]. A full copy of de Corne's text can be found on the Gallica database of the Bibliothèque Nationale de France as a part of *Quatre traictez utiles et délectables de l'agriculture*, ed. C. l'Angelier, Paris 1560.

f. 33<sup>v</sup>

## plantes

	Janvier et fevrier	Au plein de la lune oignons poireaux cholz (choux). espinars et laituez
5	Mars.	Au plein de la lune oignons poireaux choulx cabuz et blancz blettes° lectuez et plantz flureths°
	Avril	Reffortz° blettes° et laictuez.
	May	[ <del>May</del> ] Reffortz° et artichotz
	Juing	Le xv.me jour pastonades° reffortz° et cicoree
10	Juillet	Reffortz° et laictuez pour les manger tendres
	Aoust	Espinars laictuez. oignons et choulx verds pour les manger tendres
	Septembre	En la lune daoust dure° espinars laictuez et oignons
15	Aux [adues?]	A la lune dure° oignons laituez choulx et espinars. Planter des aulx° et des petis oignons.

Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë

The entire printed reproduction of this document edited by M. R. de Laigue (Vannes 1893) can be found on the Gallica database of the Bibliothèque Nationale de France.

14

[...]

Conseils.

L'on ne doibt point planter les choux en vigne ny près, car ils brûlent les vignes.

10 Toute taille soit de vigne ou d'arbres ce doibt faire en décours (période décroissante de la lune).

Toute ante<sup>o</sup> et toute plante en croissant et au montant de la lune.

Quand on change le vin d'un tonneau en aultre à la pleine lune, il devient aigre.

15 Febves demandent terre moueste (moite).

Pour oster la mousse de dessus la terre: prenez du fiens<sup>o</sup> de pourceau et l'anterrez assez près du troncq de l'arbre, mais qu'il ne touche audict troncq car il mourroit; et le faictes en mars.

20 Pour faire le fruit gros: antez<sup>o</sup> du fruit en son mesme, plus l'anterrez et plus sera gros.

Pour garder roumarain, mariolaine et aultres herbes de geler, mettez à l'entour du marc (lie) de vin ou de la seieure (sciure) de bois de chesne.

Add MS 20709

Only the English and French gardening entries found in this manuscript are being presented here.

f. 4<sup>r</sup>

1 Du gaignage de terre  
 Changer votre semail chaque an, al saint  
 mychael; car vous plus apportera la semail  
 que croist sur auter terre.

f. 4<sup>v</sup>

1 Du gaignage de terre.  
 Deux maners dez terres y sont, que doivent  
 être seimees per temps en quarreime (carême): terre  
 argilleux, & terre pierreux: car si le season  
 5 soit fait de eux en marche (mars), doncque endurecit  
 la terre argilleux trop, & enfeichit la terre  
 pierreux trop. Et purceo (parce que) les blees doivent être  
 nourries par la season de yver. Les terres  
 croisses, & sabulouses, ne besoignent (besoignent) d'être se-  
 10 imes (semées) par temps: car ceux -z- (ceux-ci) voilent être re-  
 versees en graund moisture, mes al seimer  
 soit la terre un poy (peu) arose (arrosé). Et les terres  
 marisceux (marécageux), & eawelex (aqueux), faces de reoner<sup>o</sup>,  
 & le cours de l'eaw (eau) faces courir, issint (ainsi) que  
 15 le eaw se poit deliverer.

f. 5<sup>r</sup>

1 When you plough for barlye fallowe<sup>o</sup>,  
 make a deep & square forrowe<sup>o</sup>: But  
 when you plough to sowe Barley, then  
 let your forrow<sup>o</sup> be fleet (shallow) & narrowe.  
 5 The reason is, for that at fallowing<sup>o</sup>  
 you may seek fresh moold<sup>o</sup>, but at þe  
 sowing you must take that which is wel  
 mellowed.

f. 9<sup>r</sup>

1 Du gaignage de terre  
 Avant la seicheresse de marche, votre fieme<sup>o</sup> faus  
 cuiller ensemble, quest despeche deins (dans) la court, ou  
 dehors.  
 5 Fiemes<sup>o</sup> que sont mesles one terre, mettes sur terre  
 sabuleuse: car auterment, le este (l'été), quest chaude, le  
 fieme<sup>o</sup>, quest chaude, & le sabulon (sable) quest chaud  
 auxi, comburerent (brûleront) les orges apres Seint Jhon. Lon (l'on)  
 la fieme<sup>o</sup> mesle one terre, est come un rosee al  
 10 vespre, & refroidit la blee. Vostres teres  
 fiemes<sup>o</sup> ne faces arer trop profund, purceo que  
 fiemes<sup>o</sup> wastent<sup>o</sup> en descendant. Auxi les  
 fiemes<sup>o</sup> meslees one terre dureront plus long, que

15 les fiems° soles. mes Marle durera plus  
 que fieme°, car marle waste° en amountant, mes  
 fieme° en descendant. La compost de falde°  
 tant quel est pres de semail, tant plus et vaut.  
 A la primer fest notre Dame faces enioyter (déplacer) la fald°,  
 20 car a cel season iettent plus de fime, que a ascun (aucun)  
 auter.

f. 15<sup>f</sup>

1 Du gaignage des terres.  
 Seimes (semez) vostre terre per temps, issint (ainsi) que la  
 terre soit assise (établie), & le blee enracine devant  
 le fort yver: auterment, si grand pluy chise (tombe),  
 5 deins (dans les) -8- iours apres la semence, & puis veigne  
 gelu (gelée) -2- ou -3- iours, la gelee percera la terre  
 (si el (elle) est croisse (creusée)) tant profunde que le eaw (l'eau) est  
 entre (entrée), & issint le ble quest (qu'est) tender periera.

f. 42<sup>v</sup>

1 Marle of marle, looke fol. 14 b  
 Drye, & lighte ground, beareth <sup>blew</sup> marle, best of  
 al other: & 400 loades suffisethe for an acre.  
 Marled grounde may not be ploughed to deepe,  
 5 for it wasteth° upwarde, & is therfore hyndred  
 throughe deepe plowinge: Neyther is the wete  
 season fitte for it.

10 In fraunce, their marle is white, which they  
 calle, Marne, & they use it in moyste  
 groundes.

f. 43<sup>f</sup>

1 For fruite trees, & pygeons.  
 Bestow the urine, that is made in  
 the house, in a large vessel, and let it  
 stand, open in the sunne, but defended from  
 5 the rayne, in sommer, and when it hath  
 wel settled, and gotten groundes in the  
 bottome, somewhat thicke & stiffe, powre  
 out the liquide part from the rest, and  
 10 bestowe it upon your fruite trees at the  
 rootes of them: Then take the groundes  
 or lees, and beate stone of a quarrey <sup>to powdre</sup>  
 into it, tyl it (being tempered thearwith)  
 do waxe <sup>verie</sup> thyck & stiffe, and so let it  
 15 incorporate, for it will harden to a  
 maner of stone, which is good to set in  
 your pigeonhouse, & wil make them  
 in love with it.

Parson Brock

Glossary of English gardening terms

- ambre:** sweet-ambre (*Hypericum androsaemum*). So called because of its scent.
- bennett** or **beanett:** common hemlock (*Cicuta virosa*)
- blaunderell:** a once highly prized variety of apple, now known as ‘Calville blanc’
- charlocke:** field mustard (*Sinapsis arvensis*)
- clefte, clifte** or **clyfte:** crack or notch
- cluchye:** with much ‘clutch’, a variety of couch weed, knotgrass (*Polygonum aviculare*)
- clumper:** a heavy clod of earth
- coddes:** plants growing in pods or shells
- couch** or **cowchy:** couch grass (*Agrostis stolonifera*)
- cowle:** a large tub or barrel used for carrying liquid manure
- delve:** from *delven*, to dig a hole; spade up land, cultivate; to dig around a plant
- dong(e), ding(e)** or **doung:** (verb and noun) manure used as fertilizer
- dryeth** or **droweth:** drought or dryness
- dusan of dorsetshire:** more commonly ‘duson’ or ‘deusan’, a hard apple that could be kept a long time but turned pale and shrivelled, seemingly obsolete today
- ear(e):** to till or plough land
- fallowing/fallowe:** stage of crop rotation in which the land is ploughed but left unseeded
- fu(r)row(e)** or **forrow(e):** long narrow trench made in the ground by a plough, especially for planting seeds
- gall:** an abnormal growth formed on plants often caused by insects
- grate:** an instrument for grafting
- gretten** or **greaten:** sandy or gravelly
- gripe:** action of using a gripe: a fork for lifting dung, for digging or for weeding
- hearbs** or **herbes:** plants used as food, especially leafy vegetables; also herbs, roots; medicinal plants
- hender:** hinder, the back part or rear.
- henting furrow:** the bottom furrow between ridges, thus **hent:** to plough up the bottom furrow
- hook** or **hoke:** harvest
- longedebeif** or **langdebeif:** likely ‘lang-de-boeuf’, oxtongue, (possibly *Helminthotheca echioides*). Nicholas Culpeper, *Complete Herbal*, 209.
- mawdren:** likely ‘maudlin’, the oxeye daisy (*Leucanthemum vulgare*)
- medler:** medlar (*Mespilus germanica*), a small shrub or tree of which the fruit bears the same name as the tree
- messlyne:** maslin, a mixture of corn or different kinds of grain, especially wheat and rye
- mould(e), mowld** or **moold:** ground, earth, soil; to earth up
- mowe:** a loose heap of hay or grain
- multer** or **mowlter:** moulder, to turn to dust, crumble
- muscadell:** sweet wine made from muscat grapes
- muske:** this could be referring either to the muskflower (*Mimulus moschatus*) or the muskroot (*Adoxa moschatellina*), both of which emit a musk-like scent
- navis:** navew, a kind of small turnip
- pearmain(e):** a generic name given to pear-shaped apples
- plumtre:** this could be referring to either damsons or the hairy willowherb (*Epilobium hirsutum*), an invasive perennial

- pompons:** a variety of melon or cucumber
- porres:** porret, a small leek or onion
- potters erthe:** very fine-grained soil that does not contain any iron
- pulse:** mixture of beans and peas
- purot(e)s:** possibly fireweed (from the Greek *pur* for 'fire'), also known as Rosebay Willowherb (*Chamerion angustifolium*), which is a common wild flower in England
- rampiis:** possibly referring to rampions (*Campanula rapunculus*), of which the roots could be eaten in salads in the spring. Culpeper, *Complete Herbal*, 288-289.
- ramsons:** wild garlic (*Allium ursinum*)
- rank:** heavy or abundant
- rath(e)/rather:** early/sooner
- rudge:** ridge, a strip of land thrown up by the plough or left between furrows
- seedlippe:** basket used to hold seeds while sowing
- stonn(e)rushe** or **stone rushe:** stonereach, part of a stony field where the stones lie much thicker than in any other
- stubbe:** stump of a tree or shrub; projecting root
- sword** or **sorde:** sedge (*Cyperaceae*); thus **swordly** and **sorddy:** with much sedge
- thethorne** or **thenethorne:** hawthorn tree (*Crataegus*)
- thwart** or **twhart:** cross plough, turn the earth again after it has been ploughed
- till (tillage):** prepare and cultivate land for crops
- twifallowing:** prolongs the 'fallowed' stage of crop rotation: to plough a second time before sowing
- warden tree:** a warden pear, could refer to a variety of different types of pears that do not fully ripen and so must be cooked before being eaten, or could refer to the specific variety 'Black Worcester' or 'Parkinson's Warden'
- waste:** (from the French *gaste* - *pourrir*), rot, break down
- wimble:** a hand tool for boring holes
- withyes:** can refer to a variety of species of willow or the common osier (*Salix viminalis*)

Glossary of French gardening terms

**ante** or **ente**: greffer, to graft

**ardille**: argile, clay

**aulx**: plural form of *ail*, garlic

**blette**: chard, (*Beta vulgaris*)

**couche**: a substance which gives off an artificial heat through fermentation and helps the development of plants

**fald(e)**: troupeau, a herd, most likely of sheep.

**fiens** or **fiem(e)**: fumier, manure, fertiliser

**flureths**: possibly 'fleurette', little flower

**franc**: cultivé, cultivated (as opposed to wild)

**dure (lune dure)**: the waning moon in its last quarter

**pastonades**: carottes sauvages, wild carrot, (*Daucus carota*)

**reffortz**: raiforts, horseradish (*A Armoracia rusticana*)

**reoner**: (roion) sillon, ditch or furrow

**waste**: (gaste), pourrir, rot, break down



## Bibliography

### Manuscripts

Peillac, Archives du château de la Graë Uncatalogued Manuscript. (see printed publication by M. R. de Laigue)

Glasgow, University of Glasgow MS Ferguson 150.

London, British Library Add MS 20709.

London, British Library Add MS 61822.

London, British Library Egerton MS 2608.

London, British Library Harley MS 2389.

London, British Library Lansdowne MS 101/8.

London, British Library Lansdowne MS 101/9.

London, British Library Sloane MS 556.

Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale de France Français 19087.

### Primary Sources

Columella. 'De re rustica', in *Scriptores rei rusticae*. Edited by J. Gesner. Leipzig: Sumtibus Caspari Fritsch, 1735.

Columella. *On Agriculture, Volume II: Books 5-9*. With an English translation by E. S. Forster and E. H. Heffner. Loeb Classical Library. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1954.

Nicholas Culpeper, *Complete Herbal* [1653]. Manchester: Milner, 19--

de Corne, Gorgole. 'Traicté de la manière d'enter, planter & nourrir arbres selon nostre climat' [1533], in *Quatre traictez utiles et délectables de l'agriculture*. Edited by C. l'Angelier. Paris: s.n. 1560.

de' Crescenzi, Pietro. *Ruralia commoda* [1304/1309]. s.n. 1490.

de Crox, Florent. *Almanach pour l'an de bissexe 1596*. Paris, Chez Hubert Velut, 1595.

de Laigue, M. R., *Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë* [1569-1602]. Edited by M. R. de Laigue. Vannes: Imprimerie Galles, 1893.

- de Serres, Olivier. *Théâtre d'agriculture et mesnage des champs* [1600]. Paris: Imprimerie de Madame Huzard, 1805.
- Estienne, Charles. *L'Agriculture et maison rustique* [1564]. Paris, chez Jacques Du puys, 1572.
- Fleming, Ab. *The Bucoliks of Publius Virgilius Maro together with his Georgiks*. London, Imprinted by T. O. for Thomas Woodcocke, 1589.
- Heresbach, Conrad. *Rei rusticae libri quatuor*. Cologne: s.n., 1570.
- Hesiod, *Works*, 2 vols. Edited and translated by G. Most. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 2006.
- Hill, Thomas. *A Most Briefe and Pleasaunte Treatyse, Teachynge How to Dresse, Sowe, and Set a Garden* [1563]. Edited by V. and H. Trovillion. Herrin: Trovillion Private Press, 1946.
- Hill, Thomas. *The Gardener's Labyrinth* [1577]. Edited by R. Mabey. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Lawson, William. 'A New Orchard and Garden' [1618], in *A Way to Get Wealth*. London: Printed by I. H. for Roger Iackson, 1625.
- Markham, Gervase. *The English Housewife* [1615]. Edited by M. Best. Kingston: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1986.
- Markham, Gervase. 'Farewell to Husbandry' [1623], in *A Way to Get Wealth*. London: Printed by I. H. for Roger Iackson, 1625.
- Palladius, *Opus agriculturae*. Edited by R. Rodgers. Leipzig: BSB Teubner, 1975.
- Platt, Hugh. *Floraes Paradise. Beautified and Adorned with Sundry Sorts of Delicate Fruites and Flowers*. London: Printed by H. L. for William Leake, 1608.
- Platt, Hugh. *The Jewell House of Art and Nature* [1594]. Amsterdam: Thetrum Orbis Terrarum, 1979.
- Pliny, *Naturalis Historiae Libri XXXVIII, vol. VI*. London: ex editione Gabrielis Brotier, 1826.
- Pliny, *Natural History, Volume IV*. With an English translation by H. Rackham. Loeb Classical Library. London: Heinemann, 1965.
- Tusser, Thomas. *Five hundred Points of Good Husbandry* [1573]. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1984.
- Varro, *Rerum rusticarum libri III*. Edited by G. Goetz. Leipzig: in aedibus B. G. Teubneri, 1912.

Virgil, *Opera*. Edited with critical notes by R. A. B. Mynors. Oxford Classical Texts. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1969.

### Secondary Works

Aubert, F.-A. *Dictionnaire de la noblesse*, vol. II. Paris, Chez la veuve Duchesne, 1771.

Best, M. 'Introduction', in *The English Housewife*. Edited by M. Best. Kingston: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1986.

Beurtheret, V. *Versailles des jardins vers ailleurs: le testament secret de Louis XIV*. Château-Gontier: Imprimerie de l'Indépendent, 1996.

Bushnell, R. *Green Desire: Imagining Early Modern English Gardens*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press, 2003.

Campbell, S. *A History of Kitchen Gardening*. London: Frances Lincoln, 2005.

Camporesi, P. *The Magic Harvest: food folklore and society*. Translated by J. K. Hall. Cambridge: Polity Press, 1993.

Capecchi, G. *Cosimo II e le arti di Boboli: committenza, iconografia e scultura*. Florence: Olschki, 2008.

Capp, B. *Astrology and the Popular Press: English Almanacs 1500-1800*. London: Faber and Faber, 1979.

Capp, B. 'The Status and Role of Astrology in 17<sup>th</sup> Century England', in *Scienze, credenze occulte, livelli di cultura: Convegno internazionale di studi*. Florence: L. S. Olschki, 1982, pp. 279-290.

Cashford, J. *The Moon: Myth and Image*. London: Cassell Illustrated, 2003.

Chambers, D. *The Planters of the English Landscape Garden: Botany, Trees and the Georgics*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1993.

Coffin, D. *Gardens and Gardening in Papal Rome*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991.

Coward, B. *Social Change and Continuity: England 1550-1750*. New York: Routledge, 2014.

Davis, N. Z. *Society and Culture in Early Modern France: eight essays by Natalie Zemon Davis*. London: Duckworth, 1975.

de Jong, E. *Natuur en kunst: Nederlandse tuin-en landschapsarchitectuur 1650-1740*. Amsterdam: Thoth, 1995.

- de Laigue, M. R. 'Annotations', in *Le Livre de raison de la famille de La Landelle de la Graë (1569-1602)*. Vannes: Imprimerie Galles, 1893.
- de Ribbe, C. *Livre de famille*. Tours: Alfred Mame et Fils, 1879.
- Eamon, W. *Science and the Secrets of Nature: Books of Secrets in Medieval and Early Modern Culture*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1994.
- Farr, J. *The Work of France: Labor and Culture in Early Modern Times 1350-1800*. Lanham: Rowman and Littlefield Publishers, 2008.
- Gesner, J. 'Index editionum', in *Scriptores rei rusticae veteres latini*. Leipzig: Sumtibus Caspari Fritsch, 1735.
- Gibson, J. 'Casting off Blanks', in *Material Readings of Early Modern Culture*. Edited by J. Daybell and P. Hinds, Hampshire 2010.
- Graham, T. *Modern Domestic Medicine*. London: Simpking and Marshall, 1829.
- Hale, J. *The Civilization of Europe in the Renaissance*. London: Harper Collins, 1993.
- Havens, E. *Commonplace Books: A History of Manuscripts and Printed Books from Antiquity to the Twentieth Century*. New Haven: University Press of New England, 2001.
- Hunt, J. D. *The Picturesque Garden in Europe*. London: Thames & Hudson, 2002.
- Huxley, A. *An Illustrated History of Gardening*. London: Paddington Press Ltd., 1978.
- King, H. *The Disease of Virgins: Green Sickness, Chlorosis, and the Problems of Puberty*. London: Routledge, 2004.
- Leong, E. 'Herbals she peruseth: Reading Medicine in Early Modern England', in *Renaissance Studies*, XXVIII, 2014, pp. 556-578.
- Lunais, S. *Recherches sur la lune, I: Les auteurs latins: de la fin des Guerres Puniques à la fin du règne des Antonins*. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1979.
- Mandrou, R. *De la culture populaire aux XVII<sup>e</sup> et XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècles: la Bibliothèque bleue de Troyes*. Paris: Stock, 1964.
- Mariage, T. *L'Univers de le Nostre: Les origines de l'aménagement du territoire*. Brussels: Pierre Mardaga, 1990.
- Martyn, J. 'Notes', in *Georgicorum libri quatuor*. With an English translation and notes by J. Martyn. Oxford: W. Baxter, 1827.
- McRae, A. 'Husbandry Manuals and the Language of Agrarian Improvement', in *Culture and Cultivation in Early Modern England: Writing and the Land*.

- Edited by M. Leslie and J. Raylor. Leicester: Leicester University Press, 1992, pp. 35-62.
- Morton, A. *A History of Botanical Science*. London: Academic Press, 1981.
- Mouysset, S. *Papiers de famille: Introduction à l'étude des livres de raison (France, XV<sup>e</sup>-XIX<sup>e</sup> siècle)*. Rennes: Presses Universitaires de Rennes, 2007.
- Orsi, L. 'Giovan Battista della Porta's *Villa* (1592) between tradition, reality and fiction', in *Annali di Storia moderna e contemporanea*, XI, 2005, pp. 11-66.
- Paungger, J. and Poppe, T. *Das Mondjahr 2015*. Munich: Wilhelm Goldmann Verlag, 2014.
- Pepe, E. *A Guide to Lunar Gardening 2015*. Tidegraph Ltd, 2015;
- Préaud, M. *Les effets du soleil*, Paris: Réunion des Musées Nationaux, 1995.
- Quellier, F. 'Le jardin fruitier-potager: lieu d'élection de la sécurité alimentaire à l'époque moderne', in *Revue d'histoire moderne et contemporaine*, III, 2004, pp. 66-78.
- Quest-Ritson, C. *The English Garden: A Social History*, London: Viking, 2001.
- Ringler, W. 'A Description of 61822 by William Ringler jr.', paper held with London, British Library Add MS 61822, 1950.
- Samson, A. 'Introduction: Locus Amoenus: Gardens and Horticulture in the Renaissance', in *Locus Amoenus: Gardens and Horticulture in the Renaissance*. Edited by A. Samson. Chichester: Wiley-Blackwell, 2012, pp. 1-23.
- Sasias, G. *Cultiver son jardin avec la lune 2015*. Chamalières: Editions Artemis, 2014.
- Strong, R. *The Renaissance Garden in England*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1979.
- Temkin, O. *The Falling Sickness: A History of Epilepsy from the Greeks to the Beginnings of Modern Neurology*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Press, 1971.
- Thirsk, J. 'Making a Fresh Start: Sixteenth-Century Agriculture and the Classical Inspiration', in *Culture and Cultivation in Early Modern England: Writing and the Land*. Edited by M. Leslie and J. Raylor. Leicester: Leicester University Press, 1992, pp.15-34.
- Toomey, J. 'A Medieval Woodland Manor: Hanley Castle, Worcestershire', D.Phil. thesis. University of Birmingham, 1997.
- Wiebenson, D. *The Picturesque Garden in France*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1978.

Wilkins, N. *Catalogue des manuscrits français de la bibliothèque Parker*. Cambridge: Parker Library Publications, 1993.

‘Add MS 20709’, in *British Library Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.  
<http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>.

‘Add MS 61822’, in *British Library Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.  
<http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>.

‘Egerton MS 2608’, in *British Library Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.  
<http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>.

‘Français 19087’, in *Le catalogue BNF archives et manuscrits*.  
<http://archivesetmanuscrits.bnf.fr/>.

‘Harley MS 2389’, in *British Library Explore Archives and Manuscripts*.  
<http://searcharchives.bl.uk/>.

‘household’, definition 2 (modifier). *Collins English Dictionary*. Glasgow: HarperCollins Publishers, 2014.

‘MS Ferguson 150’, in *University of Glasgow Special Collections Manuscripts Catalogue*. <http://special.lib.gla.ac.uk/manuscripts/search/>.

‘PROB 11/105/461: Will of William Suffield, Husbandman of Hanley Castle, Worcestershire’, in *The National Archives Kew Discovery Catalogue*.  
<http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D941043>.

‘PROB 11/175/115: Will of William Briton, Gentleman of Kelston, Somerset’, in *The National Archives Kew Discovery Catalogue*.  
<http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D872000>.

Take 5 gallons of ale when yt hath newly bene working, put therein the iuice of one bush of  
 vernal, & the iuice of two handfulls of the tender leaues & buds of hops. Take halfe an ounce  
 of rubarb, 4 ounces of Sone, one ounce & a halfe of anniseeds, 2 ounces & a halfe of bay  
 a good handfull of yelow root, & brinse these. Then take Scabres Cronica & Egm  
 of this a good handfull, put thise into a boulder bag & hano them in the ale, & when  
 yt hath stode 3 or 4 dayes drinke thereof Ebery morning about 9 of the clock a good dra  
 & likewise at 4 in the afternoone.

For water in the belly wh cometh yt to swell to adoyd yt out by seise.  
 Take the water of flowers of ches beate them & Straine fourth the iuice, adde to the party  
 yt bee bee strong 5 or 6 Spoonfulls, put thereto good clarified hony so much as will m  
 yt sweete: then put to a quantity of whyte wine so much as may serue for a good dra  
 let yt bee very sweete of hony & put all these together & make yt blood warme: to  
 put to yt as much of Jerepiana in powder as you can reasonably take by betwixt 2  
 fynces & your thumb & so drinke altogether.

of the Swellings of the age of elden yeeres strongly swellen throuout the body, &  
 Effectly cured by abundance of seige or wine beery expelled in less tyme then a forme  
 Experimented upon a child

To make very greate radishes

Dig your ground 2 or 3 fpace deepe so that the mould may bee very soft & hollow  
 then take a walking stick as big as your finger but yt a fote downe into the soft  
 then put a radish seeds into that deepe hole, & cover yt not aboue one inch & let the  
 of the hole bee hollow that hollowes will make the radish grow monstrous greate

To make greate artichokes

Let artichokes when they have bene bearinge cut of the leaues, & cover the roots all do  
 the emptying of a shooes mane, & cover as you see them. Spring aboue that emptying  
 yt still w<sup>th</sup> more butill the harde water bee drey: then let y<sup>e</sup> grow up & bring away all





28  
24 106

The tyme to sowe herbes not only for sallets  
but also for pottage / sowes and other

February	Parsely / Spynage / Lettys / Buglasse / Burrage / Dorres / fennell Sorrell / rices / Rocketts / marygoldes / & longe deves /
Marche	Cowcombers / mellons / Gomardes / Savery / Cabbiges / Carretts / and Margerome <i>Astychokes,</i>
April	Margerome gentle // purslane / Basyll / and Carrettes .
May	Ransons / Cicory / and Carretts .
Midsummer	Endyue / naris / radish / rampys .
In y <sup>e</sup> end of August for winter	Lettis / Spynage / Buglasse / parsely / tyme / marygoldes / and let lettys be remoued at mychelmas .
In the end of October	Let lettys be sowne and remoued at candelmas / the which may succeede the same lettys that were sowne in August . Lettys / parsely / borrage / long deves / mary goldes / they be sowne in y <sup>e</sup> end of every monthe except, November, December, and January .
A general Rule	All maner hearbes sowne in the wayne of the moone be best except radyshe only which must haue the full moone .
Tyme to remoue hearbes	Lettys at Canalemas as is sayd before / Astychokes in february / Onyons in may // Endyue betwixt our Lady day & mychaelmas Let them be buryed / and of that hearbe that is most ripe, take as you neede, and if you will haue seedes of Endyue and Succory they must be sowne in february, or marche / the other as y <sup>e</sup> sayd before,

Harley MS 2389, f. 64<sup>r</sup>

How to graffe vine vppon vine  
 Cleave the vine as on doth an other tree, & put on y<sup>e</sup>  
 graffe, on y<sup>e</sup> clofte, & stoppe it well w<sup>th</sup> waxe, & bind it  
 aboute, &c.

If a tre be longe ere it beare fruite bore an hole in y<sup>e</sup>  
 tre, w<sup>th</sup> a wimble, & y<sup>e</sup> hole beinge the wyth of the tree, and  
 drive a pynde of drie tymbre in the same hole, & stoppe  
 it w<sup>th</sup> waxe, & the same tree, shall beare fruite, y<sup>e</sup> yere /

To save p<sup>er</sup>cedd v<sup>er</sup>ys y<sup>e</sup> monethes rather then  
 other p<sup>er</sup>cedd

Graffe hem in a mulberry tree, or in a vine &c.

To save plumes of all maner all y<sup>e</sup> somer season, &c.  
 tyll allhallontide. / Graffe y<sup>e</sup> one into y<sup>e</sup> other or on

y<sup>e</sup> horn, or in y<sup>e</sup> mulberry tree, or on a cherry tree &c.

How to make medlowe or greyned fruite as spiced, &c.  
 one may keep hem untill now. / Graffe hem in

a mulberry tree, as is aforesayd, & w<sup>th</sup> the graffe in  
 some, & put in y<sup>e</sup> same some powder of clove, y<sup>e</sup> ginger &  
 camell, &c.

To make apples growe w<sup>th</sup> out blawme

Graffe hem on a fygge tree

To make greines good for to eate at allhallontide

Graffe hem in a mulberry tree or in a saye stocke /

Also graffe vppon a gollye tree a graffe of oke, & it  
 shall growe all the yere &c.

W 32  
 100

Cute your vines more early in the yeare and the latter which  
growth in lowthe and bramyls later  
after a good butlage tutt your vines nere and after a smalle butlage  
not so nere

### Of forming or fustoming vines.

After the first yeare bring your vine to one hyde let there be but  
one trunk or body and the stonde yere about grounde one or two  
eye or budde and tut it so long but to one or two budde, untill such  
tyme as it bring rank and fruitfull bramyls as it wyeth in  
aye let it have no bramyls but till such tyme as you have a fane  
and there with content you. The better your grounde is the higher  
you may let your vines growe

The your grounde is the higher may your vine be

In the plane moztefeld plunke the surres from the vines and  
ridd them from all superfluous thynge and unprofitable bramyls  
and after August when the grapes be almoste ripe take of the  
superfluous bowes and to pces and that for many notable causes

when the vines must be lift upp  
and tyed wth cosardes

You muste tye upp and tyne your vines before the budde  
wey greate yf the vines be lowe one bande will strene binding the  
hole vine to one pole as at framforde yf it be higher 2 bandes  
Every yere the vine muste be on bound because it is greate  
refreshing to it

### Of domyng of vines and ruttynge away unprofitable votes

In October November february and marche digge litle holes about  
the vines tut away the litle upper mozte votes tans the principall  
to decay then put dong to them and tutt not those litle votes hard  
by the stork but an ynche frome it

If the winter be gentle leane your vines pruned

If the winter be cold put a litle pigeons donge aboute the yong  
vines when you donge your vines to litle vines put litle  
donge and to the greate more often donging maketh the vine fruitful

**Supmes** make good donge for vines. when they be well  
growen digg your vines and lay them aboute vine bramyls  
chopped smalle and layed to the vine votes is good donge

### Of ryyng of vines

In marche you muste begin to hark or digge your vines and  
contine till October and when the heath is greate do it

## Artichokes

To make greate Artichokes.

To make your Artichoke great, youe must first make your mouthe good, and helpe the same w<sup>th</sup> Cameris Oze, Raile & Brode, Poppe Dunge or of Pigeon. Next youe must provide shippes of a good kynd, finely to remove and change the Artichoke from place at the least every fyve yer as ye doe the s<sup>th</sup> ground from t<sup>h</sup>ly to pull away the shippes in March, and agayne a month before miscolmas. Last of all to suffer but one dapple to growe on a roote.

Colmella writeth, that the Artichoke taketh most delight w<sup>th</sup> d<sup>th</sup> salt, w<sup>th</sup> will preserve hym from wormes & vermin to be ye most subiecte.

## Strawberyes

To make Strawberies greate and to continue till after miscolmas.

After they be set in the ground and growen ready to flower, all such straggles as growe out of them must be weeded, and pulled from them, and not to suffer the Strawberry roots one to touch an other.

Also to save twoe Tubbes, the one filled w<sup>th</sup> water and w<sup>th</sup> Poppe Dunge, or Pigeon Dunge, and to water them therw<sup>th</sup>, till they be almost cryed, and afterwarde to provide shew water in the other Tubbe, and therw<sup>th</sup> by or by. Dabbe to water them and this beinge done after the first crye is past ye shall see them flower agayne and beare as freshly, and as greate or greater after miscolmas then they did beare in June and July.

Maye millons.

to dry some  
 for your power  
 with a rack or  
 roll & a mallet  
 by the way left  
 that should be  
 at home to spelt  
 good tillage not  
 out to trifalora in  
 June 1594

incomprehens  
 of trifalora

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 better the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora

that it is better in some land to support it not of the best way to the  
 court, in better land to trifalora it not better in wetter & brackish ground  
 way. But if the same is dry & the land is clean at trifalora, it is  
 better to leave it unfalored, to be observed for the improvement of  
 ground that consists of a trifalora in this case, for to leave it unfalored  
 for if upon you trifalora in some land, for the sake of the soil, the land  
 will be made by the way of it, to be the improvement of the land before  
 remember the not trifalora of the tract of the land of the more valuable  
 way of remedy in taking of small ground at spring, good soil is  
 your fallow, but of the land to water & must be care to dry  
 trifalora, a reasonable matter being a much help to the improvement.

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

note for the  
 of trifalora  
 the date  
 will follow  
 to be more clear  
 at spring

Way of spring for water

role land

Some role land is better if the same be good for being before in some land of the  
 for the same & to find ground in the way of the land, for the same  
 some better that it may be better to be better for the same of the same

light land

In light & stony land begins to find in or to dry & the way of the same, but  
 the same will be better if it be found to be better, & the same of the same

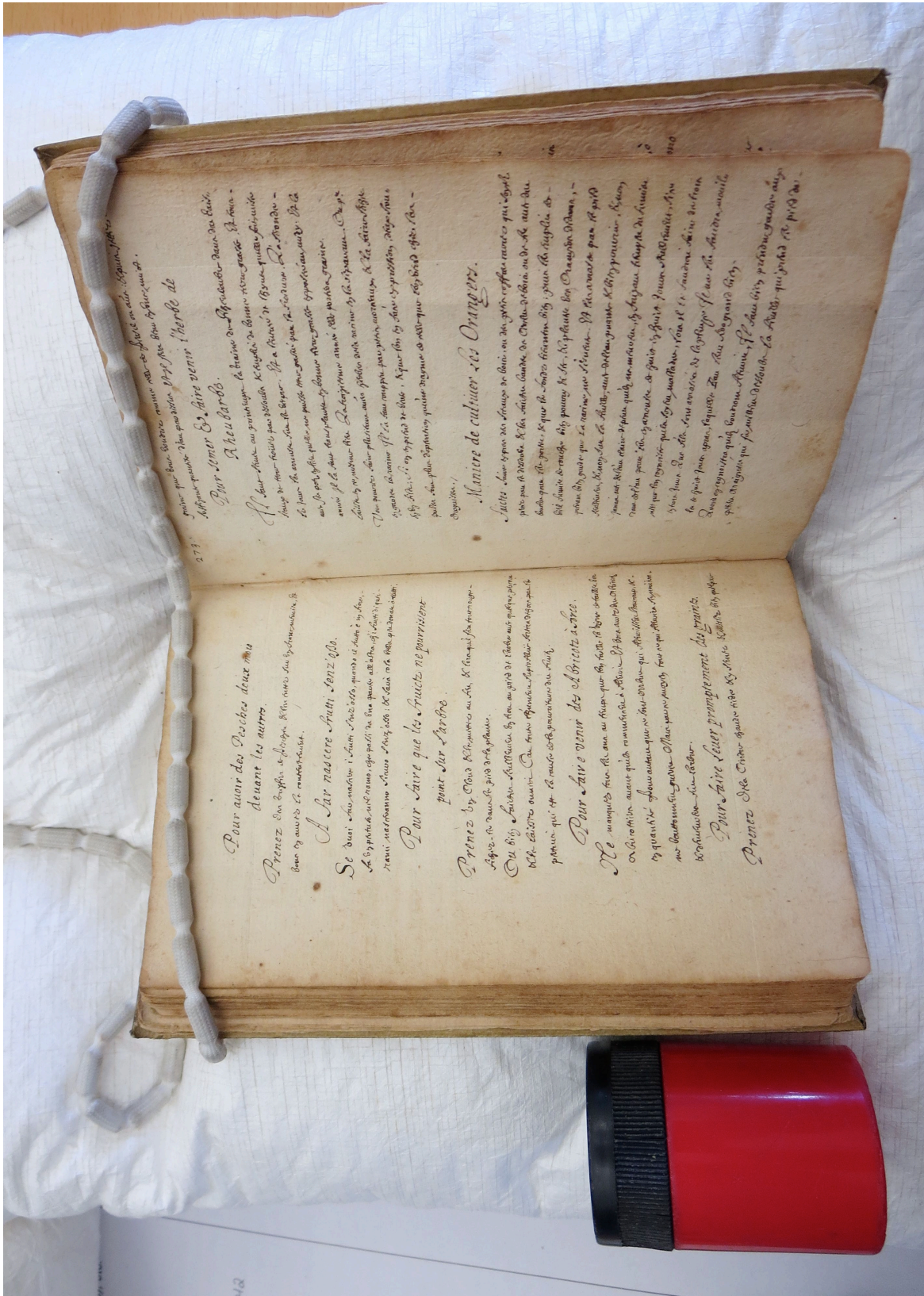
soft land

soft in light land

graft at Oulton  
first on the right hand  
to the side of the garden  
first a pear apple. first a quince  
second a pear apple. first a quince  
third a pear apple. first a quince  
fourth a pear apple. first a quince  
fifth a pear apple. first a quince  
sixth a pear apple. first a quince  
seventh a pear apple. first a quince  
eighth a pear apple. first a quince  
ninth a pear apple. first a quince  
tenth a pear apple. first a quince  
eleventh a pear apple. first a quince  
twelfth a pear apple. first a quince  
thirteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
fourteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
fifteenth a pear apple. first a quince

116

the first on the right hand  
to the side of the garden  
first a pear apple. first a quince  
second a pear apple. first a quince  
third a pear apple. first a quince  
fourth a pear apple. first a quince  
fifth a pear apple. first a quince  
sixth a pear apple. first a quince  
seventh a pear apple. first a quince  
eighth a pear apple. first a quince  
ninth a pear apple. first a quince  
tenth a pear apple. first a quince  
eleventh a pear apple. first a quince  
twelfth a pear apple. first a quince  
thirteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
fourteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
fifteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
sixteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
seventeenth a pear apple. first a quince  
eighteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
nineteenth a pear apple. first a quince  
twentieth a pear apple. first a quince  
twentyfirst a pear apple. first a quince  
twentysecond a pear apple. first a quince  
twentythird a pear apple. first a quince  
twentyfourth a pear apple. first a quince  
twentyfifth a pear apple. first a quince  
twenty-sixth a pear apple. first a quince  
twenty-seventh a pear apple. first a quince  
twenty-eighth a pear apple. first a quince  
twenty-ninth a pear apple. first a quince  
thirtieth a pear apple. first a quince  
thirtieth and last a pear apple. first a quince



272  
Pour faire venir l'herbe de  
Avec l'herbe.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'herbe de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'herbe est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'herbe. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

Maniere de cultiver les Orangers.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'orange de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'orange est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'orange. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

273  
Pour faire venir l'herbe de  
Avec l'herbe.

Pour avoir des Pochees deux fois  
deuant les autres.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'orange de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'orange est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'orange. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

Pour faire que les fruits ne pourrissent  
point sur l'arbre.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'orange de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'orange est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'orange. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

Pour faire venir des Citronniers à terre.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'orange de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'orange est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'orange. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

Pour faire venir l'herbe de  
Avec l'herbe.

Il faut faire au printemps le terrain de l'orange de l'année -  
deux ou trois fois par semaine. Et si l'orange est trop grosse et  
si l'on ne veut pas qu'elle soit trop haute, il faut la couper  
avec la faucille, ou avec la tondeuse, ou avec la machine à  
couper l'orange. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus tendre, il faut  
l'arroser avec de l'eau. Et si l'on veut qu'elle soit plus  
verte, il faut l'arroser avec de l'engrais.

273.

grain qui pour boudier comme celui de sperle ou d'air. Et qui se fait  
suffisant quantité d'eau pour dissoudre et se fera deux heures nuit.

### Pour semer & faire venir l'herbe de Rheubarbe.

Il faut s'en aller au printemps la braine de Rheubarbe dans des vais-  
seaux de terre crüe peu dissolue & remplie de bonne terre grasse & tous  
les jours la arroser avec le dit eau. Et a l'écouler de Rheubarbe qui se fait  
aut son pot & l'écouler avec un peu de terre grasse par la foudre. La seconde  
année il la faut laisser planter & bonne terre grasse & potée au milieu. Et la  
troisième & quatrième année elle portera grain.

Vous pouvez faire plusieurs autres choses de la racine de Rheubarbe. On peut  
y garder la racine & la faire coupper par petites morceaux, & la faire sécher  
à l'air libre; Si on y ajoute de l'eau, & que l'on y fasse extraction, elle se peut  
utiliser pour plusieurs usages qui ne sont pas de ceux que l'on croit être les  
mieux.

### Maniere de cultiver les Orangers.

Faites faire un peu de terre de bon ou de terre crüe & de terre qui se peut  
prendre par le dissoudre & la faire passer par le Crève de bon ou de terre aut de  
bonne terre par le pot, & que le fond se fasse en terre; puis la terre de  
sable finie de terre crüe pour le dit, & plante les Orangers dans, &  
prenez les & garde que la racine ne se seche. Et l'arrose par le pied  
de l'eau, & moule la terre, aut de l'eau pour le dit & pour le dit, & moule  
jamais aut de l'eau clair de plus qu'il ne faut, & laissez le dit de terre  
dans de l'eau pour le dit & moule & laissez le dit de terre, & moule  
nuit que l'on reconnoisse que le dit de terre, soit il se saurait faire de terre  
à terre pour le dit & moule de la terre, & moule de terre moule  
le dit & moule pour le dit, & moule de terre de grand dit.  
Quand on reconnoisse que le dit de terre, & moule de terre moule de terre  
petite on reconnoisse que le dit de terre, & moule de terre moule de terre



Français 19087, f. 33<sup>v</sup>

~~Le mois de planer~~  
 Janvier et Février Du plein de la lune ougné p<sup>r</sup>reaulte d'hy.  
 d'apmarr et cartnes

Mars. Du plein de la lune ougné p<sup>r</sup>reaulte d'hy.  
 cabn<sup>r</sup> et blancz blettes cartnes et plade flurettes

Avril K<sup>r</sup>ffortz blettes et cartnes.

Mai May K<sup>r</sup>ffortz et cartnes

Juny Le 2<sup>me</sup> p<sup>r</sup> p<sup>r</sup>sonades restortz et  
 c<sup>r</sup>oixes.

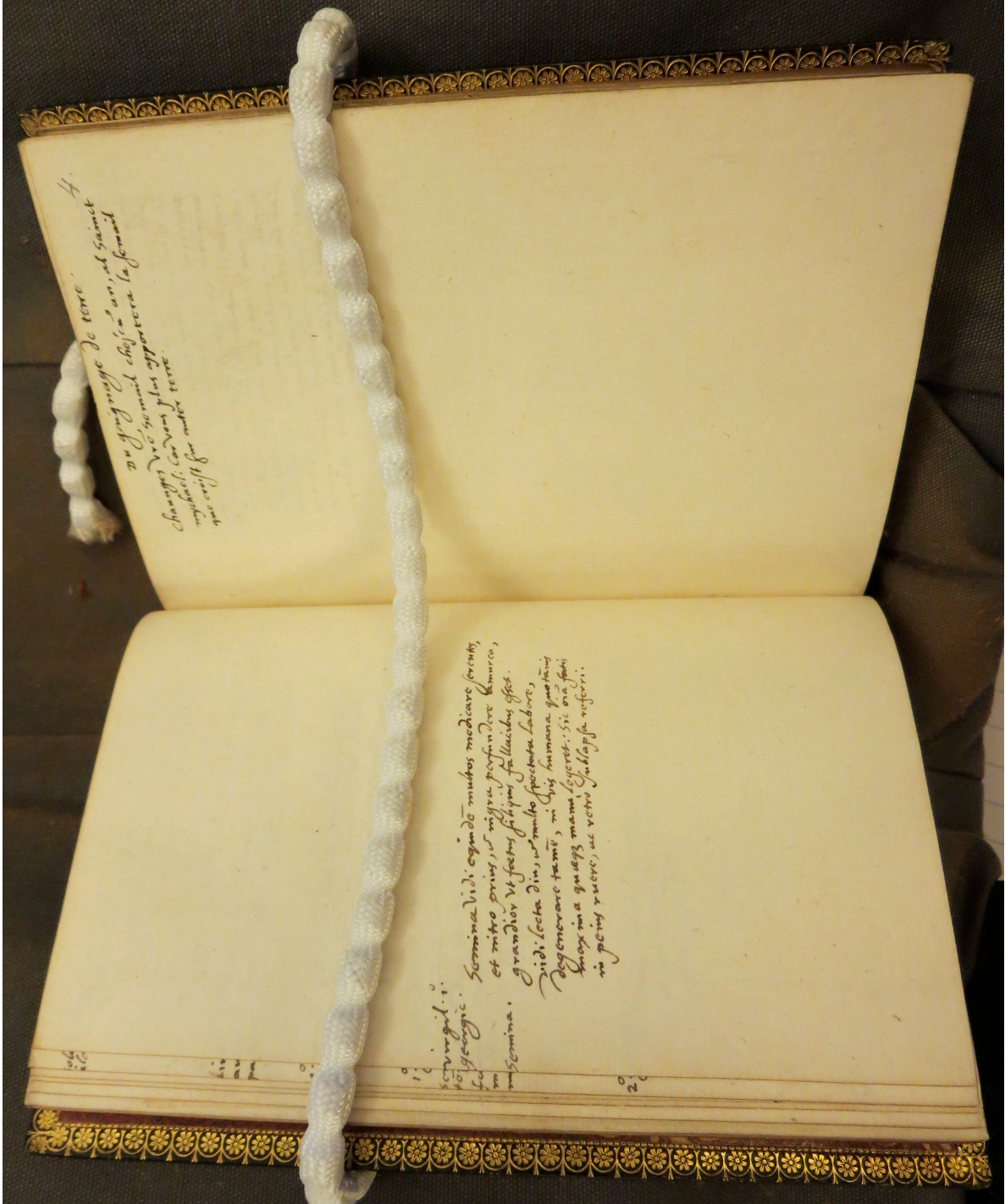
Juillet K<sup>r</sup>ffortz et cartnes p<sup>r</sup> et m<sup>r</sup>ger h<sup>r</sup>ndis

Aoust d'apmarr cartnes ougné et d'hy.  
 p<sup>r</sup> et m<sup>r</sup>ger h<sup>r</sup>ndis

Septembre d'hy. - lune d'ougné d'hy. d'apmarr  
 cartnes et ougné

Octobre d'hy. d'hy. d'ougné cartnes d'hy.  
 et d'apmarr. planke des luy  
 et des p<sup>r</sup>tes ougné.





4  
du quinquage de terre.  
Changés de semail chés'a an, al saint  
royaël: Car vous plus apporeira la femail  
que croist sur nostre terre.

106  
107  
108  
109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200  
201  
202  
203  
204  
205  
206  
207  
208  
209  
210  
211  
212  
213  
214  
215  
216  
217  
218  
219  
220  
221  
222  
223  
224  
225  
226  
227  
228  
229  
230  
231  
232  
233  
234  
235  
236  
237  
238  
239  
240  
241  
242  
243  
244  
245  
246  
247  
248  
249  
250  
251  
252  
253  
254  
255  
256  
257  
258  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269  
270  
271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304  
305  
306  
307  
308  
309  
310  
311  
312  
313  
314  
315  
316  
317  
318  
319  
320  
321  
322  
323  
324  
325  
326  
327  
328  
329  
330  
331  
332  
333  
334  
335  
336  
337  
338  
339  
340  
341  
342  
343  
344  
345  
346  
347  
348  
349  
350  
351  
352  
353  
354  
355  
356  
357  
358  
359  
360  
361  
362  
363  
364  
365  
366  
367  
368  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409  
410  
411  
412  
413  
414  
415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425  
426  
427  
428  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436  
437  
438  
439  
440  
441  
442  
443  
444  
445  
446  
447  
448  
449  
450  
451  
452  
453  
454  
455  
456  
457  
458  
459  
460  
461  
462  
463  
464  
465  
466  
467  
468  
469  
470  
471  
472  
473  
474  
475  
476  
477  
478  
479  
480  
481  
482  
483  
484  
485  
486  
487  
488  
489  
490  
491  
492  
493  
494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
510  
511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524  
525  
526  
527  
528  
529  
530  
531  
532  
533  
534  
535  
536  
537  
538  
539  
540  
541  
542  
543  
544  
545  
546  
547  
548  
549  
550  
551  
552  
553  
554  
555  
556  
557  
558  
559  
560  
561  
562  
563  
564  
565  
566  
567  
568  
569  
570  
571  
572  
573  
574  
575  
576  
577  
578  
579  
580  
581  
582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587  
588  
589  
590  
591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
600  
601  
602  
603  
604  
605  
606  
607  
608  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626  
627  
628  
629  
630  
631  
632  
633  
634  
635  
636  
637  
638  
639  
640  
641  
642  
643  
644  
645  
646  
647  
648  
649  
650  
651  
652  
653  
654  
655  
656  
657  
658  
659  
660  
661  
662  
663  
664  
665  
666  
667  
668  
669  
670  
671  
672  
673  
674  
675  
676  
677  
678  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
687  
688  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
709  
710  
711  
712  
713  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
728  
729  
730  
731  
732  
733  
734  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
744  
745  
746  
747  
748  
749  
750  
751  
752  
753  
754  
755  
756  
757  
758  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
764  
765  
766  
767  
768  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774  
775  
776  
777  
778  
779  
780  
781  
782  
783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
790  
791  
792  
793  
794  
795  
796  
797  
798  
799  
800  
801  
802  
803  
804  
805  
806  
807  
808  
809  
810  
811  
812  
813  
814  
815  
816  
817  
818  
819  
820  
821  
822  
823  
824  
825  
826  
827  
828  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877  
878  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885  
886  
887  
888  
889  
890  
891  
892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898  
899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905  
906  
907  
908  
909  
910  
911  
912  
913  
914  
915  
916  
917  
918  
919  
920  
921  
922  
923  
924  
925  
926  
927  
928  
929  
930  
931  
932  
933  
934  
935  
936  
937  
938  
939  
940  
941  
942  
943  
944  
945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965  
966  
967  
968  
969  
970  
971  
972  
973  
974  
975  
976  
977  
978  
979  
980  
981  
982  
983  
984  
985  
986  
987  
988  
989  
990  
991  
992  
993  
994  
995  
996  
997  
998  
999  
1000

Virgine. Scrima vi. d. egando multos medicare ferens,  
et nitro prius, ut nigru. profunde huncce,  
Grandior ut ferus folium fallacibus gge.  
Quidi lecta dms, ut multo spectata labore,  
degenerare tamē, in his humana quoniam  
hinc in a quiesq. manu, legest: si ora fari  
no prius rere, ut vatu sublapfa rufoni.

Du gaignage de terre.  
Deux maners de terres y sont, que doivent  
ee semees per temps en quatreime: terre  
argilleux, la terre pierreux: Car si le seaso  
son fait de eux en marche, Dongz endureit  
la terre argilleux trop, la enseichit la terre  
pierreux trop. Et pource les bles doivent ee  
nourries per la seaso de yuer. Les terres  
croises, la sabuloues, ne besoignot de se-  
imes par temps: Car ceux z. voient ee re-  
verses en grand moisture, mes al semer  
soit la terre un poy aorse. Et les terres  
mariscoux, la eadueloux, faces de reover,  
la le cours del eadw faces couvrir, issint que  
le eadw se poit delivrer.